

PLC Software MANUAL

Soft Components Functions
Basic Program Instructions
Applied Instructions
High Speed Counter (HSC)
Pulse Output
Communication Function
PID Control Function
C Language Function Block
Sequential Function Block
Special Function Instructions
Program Application Samples



XC Series PLC Software Manual

Index			Page
Chapter 1	Progran	n Summary	
	1-1	Program Controllers Features	9
	1-2	Programming Language	11
		1-2-1 Types of Language Available	11
	1-3	Program Formats	12
Chapter 2	Soft Co	mponents Functions	
	2-1	Summary of Soft Components	15
	2-2	Structure of Soft Components	19
		2-2-1 Memory Structure	19
		2-2-2 BitSoft Components Structure	22
	2-3	Soft Components List	23
		2-3-1 Soft Components List	23
		2-3-2 Power-off Retentive Zone	29
	2-4	Input / Output Relays (X, Y)	31
	2-5	Auxiliary Relay (M)	34
	2-6	Status Relay (S)	36
	2-7	Timer (T)	37
	2-8	Counter (C)	40
	2-9	Data Register (D)	44
	2-10	Constant (K, H)	47
	2-11	Program Principle	49
Chapter 3	Basic P	rogram Instructions	
	3-1	Basic Instruction List	56
	3-2	[LD], [LDI], [OUT]	60
	3-3	[AND], [ANI]	62
	3-4	[OR], [ORI]	63
	3-5	[LDP], [LDF], [ANDP], [ANDF], [ORP], [ORF]	64
	3-6	[LDD], [LDDI], [ANDD], [ANDDI], [ORD], [ORDI], [OUTD]	66
	3-7	[ORB]	68
	3-8	[ANB]	69
	3-9	[MCS], [MCR]	70
	3-10	[ALT]	71
	3-11	[PLS], [PLF]	72
	3-12	[SET], [RST]	73
	3-13	[OUT], [RST] (Aim at counter device)	75

	3-14	[NOP], [EI	ND]	76
	3-15	[GROUP],	[GROUPE]	77
	3-16	Programm	ning Notes	78
Chapter 4	Applied	Instruction	ons	
	4-1	Applied Ins	structions List	80
	4-2	Reading M	lethod of Applied Instructions	87
	4-3	Program F	low Instructions	90
		4-3-1	Condition Jump [CJ]	90
		4-3-2	Call Subroutine [CALL]	92
			& Subroutine Return [SRET]	
		4-3-3	Flow [SET], [ST]	93
		4-3-4	[FOR]&[NEXT]	95
		4-3-5	[FEND] & [END]	97
	4-4	Data Comp	pare Function	98
		4-4-1	LD Compare [LD]	99
		4-4-2	AND Compare [AND]	100
		4-4-3	Parallel Compare [OR]	102
	4-5	Data Move	;	104
		4-5-1	Data Compare [CMP]	105
		4-5-2	Data Compare Zone [ZCP]	106
		4-5-3	MOV[MOV]	107
		4-5-4	Data Block Move [BMOV]	109
		4-5-5	Data Block Move [PMOV]	111
		4-5-6	Fill Move [FMOV]	112
		4-5-7	FlashROM Write [FWRT]	114
		4-5-8	Zone Set [MSET]	116
		4-5-9	Zone Re-set [ZRST]	117
		4-5-10	Swap High & Low Byte [SWAP]	118
		4-5-11	Exchange [XCH]	119
	4-6	Data Oper	ation Instructions	120
		4-6-1	Addition [ADD]	121
		4-6-2	Subtraction [SUB]	123
		4-6-3	Multiplication [MUL]	124
		4-6-4	Division [DIV]	127
		4-6-5	Increment [INC] & Decrement [DEC]	129
		4-6-6	Mean [MEAN]	131
		4-6-7	Logic AND [WAND], Logic OR [WOR]	132
			& Logic Exclusive [WXOR]	
		4-6-8	Converse [CML]	134
		4-6-9	Negative [NEG]	136

4 7	OP:# I			407
4-7	Snitt i	Instructions	A.W	137
		4-7-1	Arithmetic Shift Left [SHL]	138
		470	& Arithmetic Shift Right [SHR]	440
		4-7-2	Logic Shift Left [LSL]	140
		470	& Logic Shift Right [LSR]	4.40
		4-7-3	Rotation Shift Left [ROL]	142
			& Rotation Shift Right [ROR]	
		4-7-4	Bit Shift Left [SFTL]	144
		4-7-5	Bit Shift Right [SFTR]	146
			Word Shift Left [WSFL]	148
		4-7-4	Word Shift Right [WSFR]	150
	4-8	Data Conv		152
		4-8-1	Single Word Integer converts to	153
			Double Word Integer [WTD]	
		<i>4-</i> 8 <i>-</i> 2	16 Bits Integer converts to	154
			Float Point [FLT]	
		<i>4-</i> 8-3	Float Point converts to Integer [INT]	155
		4-8-4	BCD Converts to Binary [BIN]	156
		4-8-5	Binary Converts to BCD [BCD]	157
		4-8-6	Hex. Converts to ASCII [ASCI]	158
		4-8-7	ASCII Converts to Hex. [HEX]	160
		4-8-8	Coding [DECO]	162
		4-8-9	High Bit Encoding [ENCO]	164
		4-8-10	Low Bit Encoding [ENCOL]	166
	4-9	Floating O	peration	168
		4-9-1	Float Compare [ECMP]	169
		4-9-2	Float Zone Compare [EZCP]	171
		4-9-3	Float Add [EADD]	173
		4-9-4	Float Sub [ESUB]	175
		4-9-5	Float Mul [EMUL]	176
		4-9-6	Float Div [EDIV]	177
		4-9-7	Float Square Root [ESQR]	178
		4-9-8	Sine [SIN]	179
		4-9-9	Cosine [COS]	180
		4-9-10	TAN [TAN]	181
		4-9-11	ASIN [ASIN]	182
		4-9-12	ACOS[ACOS]	183
		4-9-13	ATAN [ATAN]	184
	4-10	RTC Instru	uctions	185
		4-10-1	Read the Clock Data [TRD]	186
		4-10-2	Write Clock Data [TWR]	187

Chapter 5 High Speed Counter (HSC)

	5-1	Functions S	Summary	190
	5-2	HSC Mode		192
	5-3	HSC Rang	e	193
	5-4	HSC Input	Wiring	193
	5-5	HSC Ports	Assignment	194
	5-6	Read / Writ	te HSC Values	198
		5-6-1	Read HSC Value [HSCR]	198
		5-6-2	Write HSC Value [HSCW]	200
	5-7	HSC Reset	t Mode	201
	5-8	AB Phase	Counter Multiplication Setting	201
	5-9	HSC Exam	ples	202
	5-10	HSC Interre	uption	204
		5-10-1	Instruction Description	204
		5-10-2	Intruction Tags to HSC	205
		5-10-3	Loop Mode of HSC Interruption	207
		5-10-4	Examples of HSC Intgerruption	208
Chapter 6	Pulse O	utput		
	6-1	Functions S	Summary	213
	6-2		out Types and Instructions	214
		•	Unidirectional Ration Pulse Output	214
			without ACC/DEC Time exchanger [PLS	
		6-2-2	Variable Pulse Output [PLSF]	217
		6-2-3	Multi-segment pulse control	219
			at relative position [PLSR]	
		6-2-4	Pulse Segment Switch [PLSNEXT] / [PLSNT]	223
		6-2-5	Pulse Stop [STOP]	225
		6-2-6	Refresh the pulse number at the port [PLSMV]	226
		6-2-7	Back to the Origin [ZRN]	227
		6-2-8	Relative Position	230
			Uni-segment Pulse Control [DRVI]	
		6-2-9	Absolute Position	232
			Uni-segment Pulse Control [DRVA]	
		6-2-10	Absolute Position	234
			Multi-segment Pulse Control [PLSA]	
	6-3	Output Wir	ing	238
	6-4	Items to No	ote	239
	6-5	Sample Pro	ograms	240
	6-6	Coils and F	Registers in relation to Pulse Output	241

Chapter 7 Communication Function

	7-1	Summary		246
		7-1-1	COM Port	246
		7-1-2	Communication Paramters	248
	7-2	Modbus C	Communication	251
		7-2-1	Function	251
		7-2-2	Address	251
		7-2-3	Communication Instructions	252
	7-3	Free Form	nat Communication	260
		7-3-1	Communication Mode	260
		7-3-2	Instruction Form	261
	7-4	CAN-Bus	Communication Format	263
		7-4-1	Brief Introduction of CAN-Bus	263
		7-4-2	External Wiring	264
		7-4-3	CAN-Bus Network Form	264
		7-4-4	CAN-Bus Instructions	265
		7-4-5	Communication Form of Internal Protocol	269
		7-4-6	CAN Free Format Communication	272
Chapter 8	PID Coi	ntrol Fund	ction	
•				
	8-1	Summary		279
	8-2	Instruction	n Formats	280
	8-3	Paramete	r Settings	282
		8-3-1	Register and their Functions	283
		8-3-2	Parameters Description	284
	8-4	Auto-tune	tune Mode	286
	8-5	Advanced	l Mode	288
	8-6	Applicatio	n Outlines	288
	8-7	Example I	Programs	289
Chapter 9	C Lang	uage Fun	ction Block	
•	J	J		
	9-1	Summary		291
	9-2	Instrumen	t Form	292
	9-3	Operation	Steps	293
	9-4	Import and	d Export Functions	296
	9-5	Function E	Block Editing	297
	9-6	Example I	Program	299
	9-7	Applicatio	n Points	300
	9-8	Function I	List	301

Chapter 10 **Sequential Function BLOCK**

10-1	Basic Concept of	Block	305
	10-1-1 BLOC	CK Summary	305
	10-1-2 Reas	on to Introduce BLOCK	306
10-2	Call the Block		307
	10-2-1 Add a	BLOCK	307
	10-2-2 Move	the BLOCK	311
	10-2-3 Delet	e the BLOCK	312
	10-2-4 Modif	y the BLOCK	313
10-3	Edit the Internal I	nstructions of the Block	314
	10-3-1 Comr	non Item	314
	10-3-2 Pulse	Configure	316
	10-3-3 Modb	us Instruction	317
	10-3-4 Wait I	Instruction	318
	10-3-5 Frequ	ency Inverter Configure	319
	10-3-6 Free	Format Communication	324
10-4	Execute Form of	Block	325
10-5	Edit Requiremen	ts with Block Internal Instructions	328
10-6	Block Relative In	structions	330
	10-6-1 Instru	ction Explanation	330
	10-6-2 Timin	g Sequence of Instructions	332
10-7	Block Execute FI	ag / Bit / Register	336
10-8	Program Exampl	e	337
Chapter 11 Special	- unction Instr	uctions	
11-1	PWM Pulse Widt	h Modulation	340
11-2	Frequency Detec	t	342
11-3	Precise Time		344
11-4	Interruption		347
	11-4-1 Exter	nal Interruption	347
	11-4-2 Time	Interruption	351
Chapter 12 Program	Application \$	Samples	
12-1	Pulse Output App	olication	354
12-2	Modbus Commu	nication Application	356
12-3	Free Format Con	nmunication Application	360

Program Summary

XC Series PLCs differ from the controllers in that the signal and execution of the program occur in the controller. In this chapter, we begin with the program forms, introduce the main features, the supported two program languages etc.

1-1 . Program Controller Features
1-1 . Flogram Controller Leatures
1-2 . Programming Language
1-3 . Program Formats



1-1 Program Controller Features

Program Language

XC series PLCs support two kinds of programming language; Instruction List and Ladder, the two languages can convert to each other.

Program Security

The program is encrypted to prevent unlawful copying or modification. When uploading the encrypted program, you will be asked to input a password. This maintains the user's Copyright.

Program Comments

When the user program becomes too long, adding comments to the program and its soft components may be necessary.

Offset Function

Adding offset appendix (like X3[D100], M10[D100], D0[D100]) behind coils, data registers can realize indirect addressing. For example, when D100=9, X3[D100]=X14; M10[D100]=M19, D0[D100]=D9

Rich Basic Functions

- With enough basic instructions XC Series PLCs can fulfill basic sequential control; data moving and comparing; arithmetic operation; logic control; data loop and shift etc.
- XC Series PLCs also support special comparisons; high speed pulse; frequency testing; precise time; PID control: position control etc. for interruption, high speed counter (HSC).

PLC Software Manual Page 9 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

C Language Function Block

XC Series PLCs support C language function block. Users can call the edited function block freely. This function reduces the program size greatly.

Stop when Power ON Function

XC Series PLCs support "Stop when Power ON PLC" function. With this function, if there is a serious problem whilst the PLC is running, this function will allow the system to stop all output immediately.

Communication Function

XC series PLCs support many communication formats, for example, Modbus communication, CAN-Bus communication and Free Format communication. Via a special network module PLCs can also be connected to Ethernet or GPRS net.



1-2 Programming Language

1-2-1 Types of Language Available

XC Series PLCs support two types of program language:

Instruction List

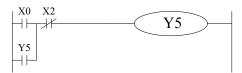
Instruction list inputs in the form of "LD", "AND", "OUT" etc. This is the basic input form of the programs, but it's hard to read and understand;

E.g.:	Step	Instruction	Soft Components
	0	LD	X000
	1	OR	Y005
	2	ANI	X002
	3	OUT	Y005

Ladder List

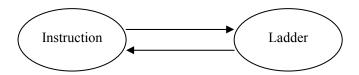
With sequential control signal and soft components, it is possible to draw the sequential control graph on the program interface, this method is called "Ladder". This method uses coil signs etc. to represent sequential circuits, so it's easier to understand the program. Meantime, it allows monitoring of the PLC showing the circuit's status.

E.g.:



1-2-2 Alternation

The above two methods can convert to ech other freely:

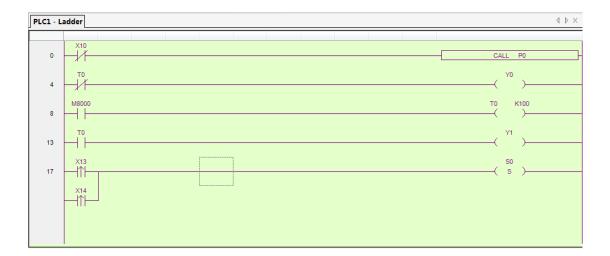




1-3 Programming Formats

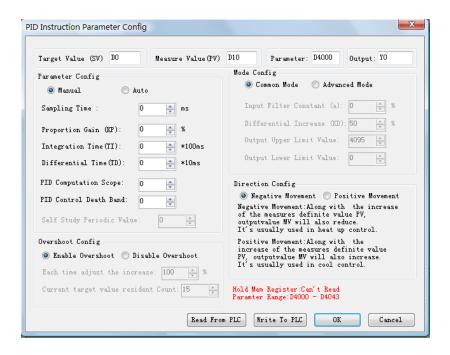
Direct Input

The above two program methods allow input in the corresponding interface separately, however, in the ladder window, there is an instruction hint function, this improves the program efficiency greatly.



Panel Configuration

Some of the functions, like PID and high speed counters, have a faceplate wizard which help guide the user when inputing the configuration and settings.



2 Soft Component's Functions and Actions

In chapter 1, we briefly covered the program languages of XC Series PLCs. However, the most important element to a program is the operands. These elements relate to the relays and registers inside the controller. In this chapter, we will describe the functions and methods of using these.

2-1 . Summary of the Soft Components
2-2 . Structure of the Soft Components
2-3 . List of the Soft Components
2-4 . Input/output Relays (X, Y)
2-5 . Auxiliary Relays (M)
2-6 . Status Relays (S)
2-7 . Timers (T)
2-8 . Counters (C)
2-9 . Data Registers (D)
2-10 . Constant (K, H)
2-11 . Pointer (P, I)
2-12 . Program Principle



2-1 Summary of the Soft Components

There are many relays, timers and counters inside PLCs. They all have countless NO (Normally ON) and NC (Normally Closed) contactors. Connecting these contactors with the coils will make a sequential control circuit. Below, we will introduce these soft components briefly;

Input Relay (X)

Usage of the input relays

The input relays are used to accept the external ON/OFF signal, we use **X** to state.

- Address Specify Principle
 - In each basic unit, specify the ID of input relay, output relay in the form of X000~X007, X010~X017...,Y000~Y007, Y010~Y017... (octal form).
 - ➤ The expansion module's ID obeys the principle of channel 1 starts from X100/Y100, channel 2 starts from X200/Y200... 7 expansions can be connected in total.
- Points to pay attention to when using:
 - For the input relay's input filter, we use digital filter. Users can change the filter parameters via relate settings.
 - > PLCs are equipped with with more relays than are required for the input/output points, these can be utilized as auxiliary relays, program as normal contactors/coils.

Output Relay (Y)

Usage of the output relays

Output relays are the interface of drive external loads, represent with sign Y;

- Address Assignment Principle
 - ➤ In each basic unit, assign the ID of output relays in the form of Y000~Y007, Y010~Y017... this octal format.
 - The ID of expansion obeys the principle of: channel 1 starts from Y100, channel 2 starts from Y200... 7 expansions could be connected totally.

Auxiliary Relays (M)

Auxiliary relays are equipped inside PLC, represent with the sign of M;

Address assignment principle

In basic units, assign the auxiliary address in decimal form.

- Points to note:
 - This type of relay differs from the input/output relay, it can't be used to take an external load, it can only use in program.
 - A retentive relay can keep its ON/OFF status in case of PLC power OFF.

Status Relays (S)

Usage of status relays

Used as relays in Ladder, represent with "S"

Address assignment principle

In basic units, assign the ID in decimal form.

Points to note:

If not used as operation number, they can be used as auxiliary relays, program as normal contactors/coils. They can also be used as signal alarms, for external diagnosis.

Timer (T)

Usage of the timers

Timers are used to calculate the time pulse like 1ms, 10ms, 100ms etc. when the set value is reached, the output contactor acts, represent with "T"

Address assignment principle

In basic units, assign the timer's ID in decimal form, but divide ID into several parts according to the clock pulse, accumulate or not. Please refer to chapter 2-2 for details.

Time pulse

There are three specifications for the timer's clock pulse: 1ms, 10ms, 100ms. If 10ms timer is selected, then timing is carried out in 10ms pulses.

Accumulation/not accumulation

The times are divided into two modes: accumulation time means even the timer coil's driver is OFF, the timer will still keep the current value; while the not accumulation time means when the count value reaches the set value, the output contact acts, the count value clears to 0.

Counter (C)

To facilitate different application and purposes, we can divide the counters to different types as detailed below:

- For internal count (for general use/Power OFF retentive usage)
 - ➤ 16 bits counter: for increment count, the count range is 1~32,767
 - ➤ 32 bits counter: for increment count, the count range is 1~2,147,483,647
 - ➤ These counters can be used by PLC's internal signal. The response speed is one scan cycle or longer.
- For High Speed Count (Power OFF retentive)
 - > 32 bits counter: for increment/decrement count, the count range is -2,147,483,648~ +2,147,483,647

(single phase increment count, single phase increment/decrement count, AB phase cont) The counters are tied to specific digital input channels.

➤ The high speed counter can count 80KHz frequency, it synchronizes with the PLC's scan cycle.

Data Register (D)

Use of Data Registers

Data Registers are used to store data, represented by "D"

Addressing Form

The data registers in XC Series PLCs are all 16 bits (the highest bit is the sign bit), by combining two data registers together 32 bit operationcan be achieved (the highest bit is the sign bit) data process.

Points to note:

As with other soft components, data registers also have common usage type and Power OFF retentive type.

FlashROM Register (FD)

Usage of FlashROM registers

FlashROM registers are used to store data soft components, represent with "FD"

Addressing Form

In basic units, FlashROM registers are addressed in decimal form.

Points to note:

Even if the battery power is OFF, this area can retain data. So this area is used to store important parameters. FlashROM can write about 1,000,000 times, and it takes time at every write. Too many write instructions can cause permanent damage of the FD address.

Constant (B)(K)(H)

 In every type of data in PLC, B represents Binary, K represents Decimal, H represents Hexadecimal. They are used to set timers and counters values, or operands of application instructions.



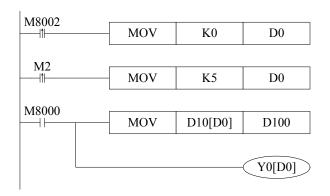
2-2 Structure of Soft Components

2-2-1 Memory Structure

There are many registers in XC Series PLCs. In addition to the common data registers D and FlashROM registers, we can also make registers by combining bit soft components.

Data Register (D)

- For common use, 16 bits
- For common use, 32 bits (via combine two sequential 16 bits registers)
- For power off retentive usage, the retentive zone can be modified
- For special usage, occupied by the system, these are special function registers used by the system
- For offset usage (indirect specifies)



Form: Dn[Dm], Xn[Dm], Yn[Dm], Mn[Dm] etc.

In the above sample, if D0=0, then D100=D10, Y0 is ON.

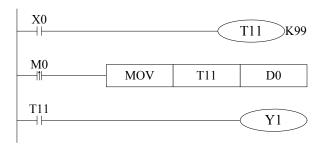
If M2 turns from OFF to be ON, D0=5, then D100=D15, Y5 is ON.

Therein, D10[D0]=D[10+D0], Y0[D0]=Y[0+D0].

- ➤ The word offset combined by bit soft components: DXn[Dm] represents DX[n+Dm].
- > The soft components with offset, the offset can be represented by soft component D.

Timer (T)

- For common usage, 16 bits, represent the current value of timer/counter;
- For common usage, 32 bits, (via combine two sequential 16 bits registers)
- To represent them, just use the letter+ID method, such as T10, C11.
 E.g.



FlashROM Register (FD)

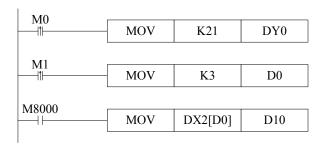
- For power off retentive usage, 16 bits
- For power off retentive usage, 16 bits, (via combine two sequential 16 bits registers)
- For special usage, occupied by the system, these are special function registers used by the system

Expansion's Internal Register

- For common usage, 16 bits,
- For common usage, 32 bits, (via combine two sequential 16 bits registers)

Bit Soft Components Combined Register

- For common usage, 16 bits, (via combine two sequential 16 bits registers).
- The soft components which can be combined to be words are: X, Y, M, S, T, C.
- Format: add "D" in front of soft components, like DM10, represents a 16 bits data from M10~M25.
- Get 16 points from DXn, but not beyond the soft components range.
 E.g.:



➤ When M0 changes from OFF to be ON, the value in the word which is combined by Y0~Y17 equals 21, i.e. Y0, Y2, Y4 becomes to be ON

2-2-2 BitSoft Components' Structure

Bit soft components structure is simple, the common ones are X, Y, M, S, T, C however, a bit of a register can also represent:

Relay

- Input Relay X, octal type
- Output Relay Y, octal type
- Auxiliary Relay M, S, decimal type
- Auxiliary Relay T, C, decimal type, as the representative method is as with registers, we need to clarify if it's a word register or bit register according within the register.

Register's Bit

- Made up by register's bit, support register D
- Represent method: Dn.m (0≤m≤15): the Nr.m bit of Dn register
- The represent method of word with offset: Dn[Dm].x
- Bit of Word can't compose to be word again;
 E.g.:



- > D0.4 means when the Nr.4 bit of D0 is 1, set Y0 ON.
- > D5[D1].4 means bit addressing with offset, if D1=5, then D5[D1]



2-3 Soft Components List

2-3-1 Soft Components List

XC1 Series

			Ra	ange			points			
Mnemonic	Name	10I/O	16 I/O	24 I/O	32 I/O	10 I/O		24 I/O	32 I/O	
	Input Points	X0~X4	X0~X7	X0~X13	X0~X17	5	8	12	16	
I/O points*1	Output Points	Y0~Y4	Y0~Y7	Y0~Y13	Y0~Y17	5	8	12	16	
X*2	Internal Relay		X0~X77 64							
Y*3	Internal Relay		Y0	~Y77				64		
		М	0~M199【N	/1200~M319】	_* 4			320		
		For S	pecial Usag	e *5M8000~N	18079					
M	Internal Relay	For S	pecial Usag	e *5M8120~N	18139					
		For S	pecial Usag	e *5M8170~N	18172			128		
		For S	pecial Usag	e *5M8238~N	18242					
		For S	For Special Usage *5M8350~M8370							
S	Flow		S0	~S31				32		
	Timer	T0~T23: 100ms not accumulation								
		T100~T115: 100ms accumulation								
Т		T200~T223: 10ms not accumulation					80			
'		T300~T307: 10ms accumulation						00		
		T400~T403: 1ms not accumulation								
		T50	00~T503: 1	ms accumulat	ion					
	Counter	C0~C23: 16 bits forward counter								
		C300~C315: 32 bits forward/backward counter								
С		C600~C603: single-phase HSC					48			
		C620~C621								
		C630~C631								
		С	00~D99【D	99【D100~D149】* ⁴				150		
		For Special Usage *5D8000~D8029								
		For Special Usage *5D8060~D8079								
D	Data Register	For S	pecial Usag	je ^{∗5} D8120~D	8179	1				
		For S	pecial Usag	je ^{∗5} D8240~D	8249			138		
		For S	pecial Usag	je ^{*5} D8306~D	8313	1				
		For S	pecial Usaç	ge ^{×5} D8460~D	8469					

		FD0~FD411	412	
		For Special Usage *5FD8000~FD8011		
FD	FlashROM	For Special Usage *5FD8202~FD8229		
Re	Register*6	For Special Usage *5FD8306~FD8315	98	
		For Special Usage *5FD8323~FD8335		
		For Special Usage *5FD8350~FD8384		

XC2 Series

		Range Points								
Mnemonic	Name	14 I/O	16 I/O	24/32 I/O	48/60 I/O	14 I/O	16 I/O	24/32 I/O	48/60 I/O	
I/O Points*1	Input Points	X0~X7	X0~X7	X0~X15 X0~X21	X0~X33 X0~X43	8	8	14/18	28/36	
I/O FOIRIS	Output Points	Y0~Y5	Y0~Y7	Y0~Y11 Y0~Y15	Y0~Y23 Y0~Y27	6	8	10/14	20/24	
X ^{×2}	Internal Relay		Х	0~X1037				544		
Y*3	Internal Relay		Υ	0~Y1037				544		
М	Internal Relay			0~M2999 00~M7999】* ⁴	8000					
		For Special Usage ^{×5} M8000~M8767						768		
S	Flow	\$0~\$511 【\$512~\$1023】* ⁴					1024			
		T	0~T99: 10	Oms not accum	ulation					
	Timer	T100~T199: 100ms accumulation								
		T200~T299: 10ms not accumulation								
Т		T300~T399: 10ms accumulation					640			
		T400~T499: 1ms not accumulation								
	-	T500~T599: 1ms accumulation								
			T600~T639: 1ms precise time							
	-	C0~C299: 16 bits forward counter C300~C599: 32 bits forward/backward counter					-			
С	Counter					640				
J	Counter	C600~C619: single-phase HSC C620~C629: double-phase HSC				040				
		C630~C639: AB phase HSC			1					

		D0~D999	
D	Data	【D4000~D4999】* ⁴	2000
_	Register	For Special Usage ^{×5} D8000~D8511	612
		For Special Usage ^{×5} D8630~D8729	612
FD	FLASH	FD0~FD127	128
FD	Register	For Special Usage ^{×5} FD8000~FD8383	384

XC3 Series

			Range					
Mnemonic	Name	14 I/O	24/32 I/O	48/60 I/O	14 I/O	24/32 I/O	48/60 I/O	
I/O Points ^{×1}	Input Points	X0~X7	X0~X15 X0~X21	X0~X33 X0~X43	8	14/18	28/36	
	Output Points	Y0~Y5	Y0~Y11 Y0~Y15	Y0~Y23 Y0~Y27	6	10/14	20/24	
X*2	Internal Relay	X0~X1037				544		
Y*3	Internal Relay	Y0~Y1037				544		
		M0~M2999						
М	Internal Relay	[M3000~M7999] *4				8000		
		For Special Usage ^{x5} M8000~M8767				768		
			S0~S511					
S	Flow	[S512~S1023] *4				1024		
		T0~T99: 100ms not accumulation						
		T100~T199: 100ms accumulation						
		T200~T299: 10ms not accumulation				on		
Т	TIMER	T300~T399: 10ms accumulation				640		
		T400~T499: 1ms not accumulation						
			T599: 1ms accum					
		1600	~T639: 1ms precis	e time				

L.			
		C0~C299: 16 bits forward counter	
		C300~C599: 32 bits forward/backward counter	640
С	COUNTER	C600~C619: single-phase HSC	
		C620~C629: double-phase HSC	
		C630~C639: AB phase HSC	
		D0~D3999	
D	DATA REGISTER	【D4000~D7999】 *4	8000
		For Special Usage ^{*5} D8000~D9023	1024
FD	FlashROM	FlashROM FD0~FD1535	
r b	REGISTER*6	For Special Usage*5FD8000~FD8511	512
	EXPANSION'S		
ED*7	INTERNAL	ED0~ED16383	16384
	REGISTER		

XC5 Series

Mnemonic	Name	I/O R	ANGE	POI	NTS
Minemonic	Name	24/32 I/O	24/32 I/O 48/60 I/O		48/60 I/O
I/O Points ^{×1}	Input Points	X0~X15 X0~X21	X0~X33 X0~X43	14/18	28/36
	Output Points	Y0~Y11 Y0~Y15	Y0~Y23 Y0~Y27	10/14	20/24
X*2	Internal Relay	X0~X	X1037	54	14
Y*3	Internal Relay	Y0~`	Y1037	54	14
М	Internal Relay	【M4000~	M0~M3999 [M4000~M7999] *4 For Special Usage*5M8000~M8767		
S	Flow		\$0~\$511 [\$512~\$1023] *4		24
Т	TIMER	T0~T99: 100ms T100~T199: 100 T200~T299: 10m T300~T399: 10 T400~T499: 1ms T500~T599: 1r	64	1 0	

		C0~C299: 16 bits forward counter	
		C300~C599: 32 bits forward/backward counter	
С	COUNTER	C600~C619: single-phase HSC	640
		C620~C629: double-phase HSC	
		C630~C639: AB phase HSC	
		D0~D3999	
D	DATA REGISTER	【D4000~D7999】* ⁴	8000
		For Special Usage*5D8000~D9023	1024
	FlashROM	FD0~FD5119	5120
FD	REGISTER*6	For Special Usage*5FD8000~FD9023	1024
	EXPANSION'S		
ED*7	INTERNAL	ED0~ED36863	36864
	REGISTER		

XCM Series

Mnemonic	Name	I/O	Range	Poir	nts
winemonic	Name	24/32 I/O	48 I/O	24/32 I/O	48 I/O
	Input Points	X0~X15	X0~X33	14/18	28
I/O Points*1	input Foints	X0~X21	70-733	14/10	20
1/01 011113	Output Points	Y0~Y11	Y0~Y23	10/14	20
	Output i Ointo	Y0~Y15	10 120	10/14	20
X*2	Internal Relay	X0~	X1037	54	4
Y*3	Internal Relay	Y0~	Y1037	54	4
		M0~	M2999		
М	Internal Relay	【M3000	8000		
		For Special Usag	ge ^{×5} M8000~M8767	768	
		S0	-S511		
S	Flow	(S512~	·S1023】* ⁴	1024	
		T0~T99: 100ms	not accumulation		
		T100~T199: 10	Oms accumulation	1	
		T200~T299: 10m	ns not accumulation	_]
Т	TIMER	T300~T399: 10	ms accumulation	64	0
	THVILIX	T400~T499: 1m			
		T500~T599: 1	T500~T599: 1ms accumulation	_	
		T600~T639: 1			

		C0~C299: 16 bits forward counter		
		C300~C599: 32 bits forward/backward counter		
С	COUNTER	C600~C619: single-phase HSC	640	
		C620~C629: double-phase HSC		
		C630~C639: AB phase HSC		
		D0~D2999		
D	DATA REGISTER	【D4000~D4999】* ⁴	4000	
		For Special Usage ^{×5} D8000~D9023	1024	
	FleebDOM	FD0~FD63		
FD	FlashROM REGISTER*6	For Special Usage ^{×5} FD8000~FD8349	400	
	REGISTER	For Special Usage ^{×5} FD8890~FD8999	460	
	EXPANSION'S			
ED* ⁷	INTERNAL	ED0~ED36863	36864	
	REGISTER			

- ※1: I/O points, means the terminal number that users can use to wire the input s/outputs;
- x ≥ X, means the internal input relay, the X beyond Input points can be used as middle relay;
- ※3: Y, means the internal output relay, the Y beyond Output points can be used as middle relay;

- %6: FlashROM registers needn't set the power off retentive zone, when power is off (no battery), the
 data will not be lost;
- ※7: Expansion's internal register ED, requires PLC hardware V3.0 or above;
- \times 8: Input coils、output relays are in octal form, the other registers are in decimal form;
- ×9: I/Os that are not connected to external devices can be used as fast internal relays;
- ×10: for the soft components of expansion devices, please refer to related manuals;

2-3-2 Power-off Retentive Zone

The power off retentive area of XC Series PLCs are set as below, this area can be re-set by user:

	Soft components	SET AREA	FUNCTION	System's default value	Retentive Zone
	D	FD8202	Start tag of D power off retentive zone	100	D100~D149
VC4	М	FD8203	Start tag of M power off retentive zone	200	M200~M319
XC1 Series	Т	FD8204	Start tag of T power off retentive zone	640	Not set
Series	С	FD8205	Start tag of C power off retentive zone	320	C320~C631
	S	FD8206	Start tag of S power off retentive zone	512	S0~S31
	D	FD8202	Start tag of D power off retentive zone	4000	D4000~D4999
y o o	М	FD8203	Start tag of M power off retentive zone	3000	M3000~M7999
XC2 Series	Т	FD8204	Start tag of T power off retentive zone	640	Not set
Series	С	FD8205	Start tag of C power off retentive zone	320	C320~C639
	S	FD8206	Start tag of S power off retentive zone	512	S512~S1023
	D	FD8202	Start tag of D power off retentive zone	4000	D4000~D7999
	М	FD8203	Start tag of M power off retentive zone	3000	M3000~M7999
хсз	Т	FD8204	Start tag of T power off retentive zone	640	Not set
Series	С	FD8205	Start tag of C power off retentive zone	320	C320~C639
	S	FD8206	Start tag of S power off retentive zone	512	S512~S1023
	ED	FD8207	Start tag of ED power off retentive zone	0	ED0~ED16383
	D	FD8202	Start tag of D power off retentive zone	4000	D4000~D7999
	М	FD8203	Start tag of M power off retentive zone	4000	M4000~M7999
XC5	Т	FD8204	Start tag of T power off retentive zone	640	Not set
Series	С	FD8205	Start tag of C power off retentive zone	320	C320~C639
	S	FD8206	Start tag of S power off retentive zone	512	S512~S1023
	ED	FD8207	Start tag of ED power off retentive zone	0	ED0~ED36863
	D	FD8202	Start tag of D power off retentive zone	4000	D4000~D4999
	М	FD8203	Start tag of M power off retentive zone	3000	M3000~M7999
хсм	Т	FD8204	Start tag of T power off retentive zone	640	Not set
Series	С	FD8205	Start tag of C power off retentive zone	320	C320~C639
	S	FD8206	Start tag of S power off retentive zone	512	S512~S1023
	ED	FD8207	Start tag of ED power off retentive zone	0	ED0~ED36863

For timer T, we can set not only retentive zone, but also set certain timer's retentive zone

Soft	Set area	Function	Retentive Zone
Components			
	FD8323	Set the start tag of 100ms not accumulation timer's retentive	The set value ~T99
		zone	
	FD8324	Set the start tag of 100ms accumulation timer's retentive	The set value~T199
		zone	
	FD8325	Set the start tag of 10ms not accumulation timer's retentive	The set value~T299
Т		zone	
	FD8326	Set the start tag of 10ms accumulation timer's retentive zone	The set value~T399
	FD8327	Set the start tag of 1ms not accumulation timer's retentive	The set value~T499
		zone	
	FD8328	Set the start tag of 1ms accumulation timer's retentive zone	The set value~T599
	FD8329	Set the start tag of 1ms precise timer's retentive zone	The set value~T639

For counter C, we can set not only retentive zone, but also set certain counter's retentive zone

Soft	Set area	Function	Retentive Zone
Components			
	FD8330	Set the start tag of 16 bits positive counter's retentive zone	The set value~C299
	FD8331	Set the start tag of 32 bits positive/negative counter's	The set value~C599
С		retentive zone	
C	FD8332	Set the start tag of single phase HSC's retentive zone	The set value~C619
	FD8333	Set the start tag of dual direction HSC's retentive zone	The set value~C629
	FD8334	Set the start tag of AB phase HSC's retentive zone	The set value~C639



2-4 Input / Output Relays (X, Y)

Number List

XC Series PLC's inputs/outputs are all in octal form, each series numbers are listed below:

Series Name	Range					Points			
	Name	10I/O	10I/O 16 I/O 24 I/O 32 I/O				16 I/O	24 I/O	32 I/O
XC1	Х	X0~X4	X0~X7	X0~X13	X0~X17	5	8	12	16
	Υ	Y0~Y4	Y0~Y7	Y0~Y13	Y0~Y17	5	8	12	16

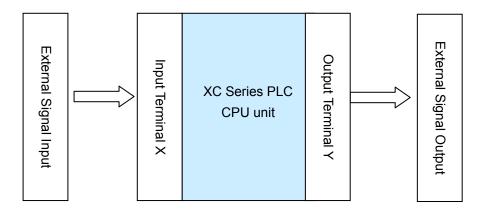
		Range					Points				
Series	Name	14.1/0	16 I/O	24/32 I/O	48/60 I/O	14 1/0	16 1/0	24/32 I/O	48/60		
		14 I/O	16 1/0	24/32 1/0	40/00 1/0	14 1/0	10 1/0	24/32 1/0	I/O		
	>	X	×	X0~X7	X0~X7	X0~X15	X0~X33	8	8	14/18	28/36
XC2	^	λ0~λ7	\\\^\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\	X0~X21	X0~X43		0	14/10	20/30		
702	Υ	V V0	V V0 V5	V0 V7	Y0~Y11	Y0~Y23	6	8	40/44	20/24	
		Y0~Y5	Y0~Y7	Y0~Y15	Y0~Y27	6	°	10/14	20/24		

			Range		Points		
Series	Name	14 I/O	24/32 I/O	48/60 I/O	14 I/O	24/32 I/O	48/60 I/O
	Х	X0~X7	X0~X15	X0~X33	8	14/18	28/36
XC3	^	\\0~\\1	X0~X21	X0~X43	0	14/10	20/30
\C3	V	V0V5	Y0~Y11	Y0~Y23	6	10/14	20/24
	ī	Y Y0~Y5	Y0~Y15	Y0~Y27	6	10/14	20/24

Series	Name	Rang	е	Point	is
Selles	Name	24/32 I/O	48/60 I/O	24/32 I/O	48/60 I/O
	Х	X0~X15	X0~X33	14/18	28/36
XC5	^	X0~X21	X0~X43	14/10	20/30
703	V	Y0~Y11	Y0~Y23	10/14	20/24
	Y	Y0~Y15	Y0~Y27	10/14	20/24

Series	Name	Range			Points		
Selles	Name	24 I/O	32 I/O	48 I/O	24 I/O	32 I/O	48 I/O
XCM	Х	X0~X15	X0~X21	X0~X33	14	18	28
ACIVI	Y	Y0~Y11	Y0~Y15	Y0~Y23	10	14	20

Function



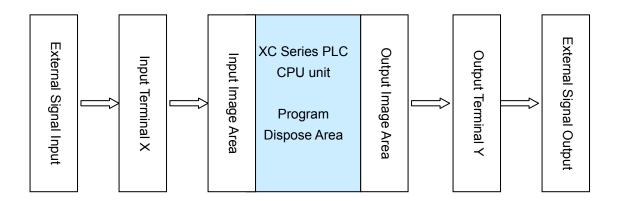
Input Relay X

- PLC's input terminals are used to accept the external signal input, while the input relays are a type of optical relays to connect PLC inside and input terminals;
- The input relays have countless normally ON/OFF contactors, they can be used freely;
- The input relays which are not connected with external devices can be used as fast internal relays;

Output Relay Y

- PLC's output terminals can be used to send signals to external loads. Inside PLC, output relay's external output contactors (including relay contactors, transistor's contactors) connect with output terminals.
- The output relays have countless normally ON/OFF contactors, they can be used freely;
- The output relays which are not connected with external devices can be used as fast internal relays;

Execution Order



Input Disposal

- ➤ Before PLC executing the program, read every input terminal's ON/OFF status of PLC to the image area.
- In the process of executing the program, if the input is changed, the content in the input image area will not change. However, in the next scan cycle, the status of the input will change.

Output Disposal

- Once finished executing all the instructions, transfer the ON/OFF status of output Y image area is set. This will be the actual output of the PLC.
- > The contacts used for the PLC's external output will act according to the device's response delay time.



2-5 Auxiliary Relay (M)

Number List

The auxiliary relays M in XC Series PLCs are all in decimal form, please refer the details from tables below:

		RANGE				
SERIES	NAME	FOR COMMON USE	FOR POWER-OFF	FOR SPECIAL USE		
		FOR COMMON USE	RETENTIVE USE	FOR SPECIAL USE		
				M8000~M8079		
	XC1 M	M000~M199	M200~M319	M8120~M8139		
XC1				M8170~M8172		
			M8238~M8242			
				M8350~M8370		

			RANGE	
SERIES		FOR COMMON USE	FOR POWER-OFF	FOR SPECIAL USE
	FOR COMMON USE		RETENTIVE USE	FOR SPECIAL USE
XC2	М	M000~M2999	M3000~M7999	M8000~M8767

			RANGE	
SERIES	NAME	FOR COMMON USE	FOR POWER-OFF	FOR SPECIAL USE
	FOR COMMON (FOR COMMON USE	RETENTIVE USE	FOR SPECIAL USE
XC3	М	M000~M2999	M3000~M7999	M8000~M8767

			RANGE	
SERIES		FOR COMMON USE	FOR POWER-OFF	FOR SPECIAL USE
	FOR COMMON US	FOR COMMON USE	RETENTIVE USE	FOR SPECIAL USE
XC5	М	M000~M3999	M4000~M7999	M8000~M8767

			RANGE	
SERIES		FOR COMMON USE	FOR POWER-OFF	FOR SPECIAL USE
		FOR COMMON USE	RETENTIVE USE	FOR SPECIAL USE
XCM	М	M000~M2999	M3000~M7999	M8000~M8767

Function

In PLC, auxiliary relays M are used frequently. This type of relay's coil is same with the output relay. They are driven by soft components in PLCs;

auxiliary relays M have countless normally ON/OFF contactors. They can be used freely, but this type of contactors can't drive external loads.

For common use

- This type of auxiliary relays can be used only as normal auxiliary relays. i.e. if power supply suddenly stops during running, the relays will disconnect.
- Common usage relays can't be used for power off retentive, but the zone can be modified;

For Power Off Retentive Use

- > The auxiliary relays for power off retentive usage, if power is lost to the PLC, the ON/OFF satus is retained:
- Power off retentive zone can be modified by the user;
- Power off retentive relays are usually used to retain memory of the status before power is lost, when power is restored to the PLC, the current status will resume;

For Special Usage

- > Special relays refer some relays which are defined with special meanings or functions, start from M8000.
- There are two types of usages for special relays, one type is used to drive the coil, the other type is used to the specified execution;
 - E.g.: M8002 is the initial pulse, activates only at the moment of start M8033 is "all output disabled"
- > Special auxiliary relays can't be used as a normal relay M;



2-6 Status Relay (S)

Address List

XC Series PLCs' status relays S are addressed in decimal form; each subfamily's ID are listed below:

SERIES	NAME		RANGE
SERIES	INAIVIE	FOR COMMON USE	FOR POWER-OFF RETENTIVE USE
XC1	S	S000~S031	-

SERIES	NAME	RANGE	
SERIES	SERIES NAIVIE	FOR COMMON USE	FOR POWER-OFF RETENTIVE USE
XC2	S	S000~S511	S512~S1023

SERIES NAME		RANGE	
SERIES INAIVIE	FOR COMMON USE	FOR POWER-OFF RETENTIVE USE	
XC3	S	S000~S511	S512~S1023

SERIES	NAME	RANGE	
		FOR COMMON USE	FOR POWER-OFF RETENTIVE USE
XC5	S	S000~S511	S512~S1023

SERIES	NAME	RANGE	
		FOR COMMON USE	FOR POWER-OFF RETENTIVE USE
XCM	S	S000~S511	S512~S1023

Function

Status relays are very import in ladder programming; usually use them with instruction "STL". In the form on flow, this can make the program's structure much clearer and easy to modify;

For common use

If the PLC loses power, this type of relay will revert to OFF status;

- For Power Off Retentive Use
 - ➤ The auxiliary relays for power off retentive usage, if power is lost to the PLC, the ON/OFF satus is retained;
 - > Power off retentive zone can be modified by the user;
- The status relays also have countless "normally ON/OFF" contactors. So users can use them freely in the program;



2-7 Timer (T)

Address List

XC Series PLCs' timers T are addressed in decimal form; each subfamily's ID are listed below:

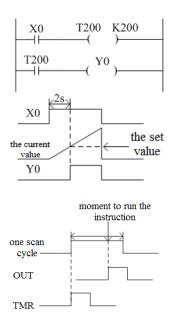
CEDIEC	NAME	RANGE	E	
SERIES	INAIVIE	FOR COMMON USE	POINTS	
		T0~T23: 100ms not accumulation		
		T100~T115: 100ms accumulation		
XC1	т	T200~T223: 10ms not accumulation	80	
AC1	-	T300~T307: 10ms accumulation	80	
		T400~T403: 1ms not accumulation		
		T500~T503: 1ms accumulation		
		T0~T99: 100ms not accumulation		
YOO		T100~T199: 100ms accumulation		
XC2 XC3		T200~T299: 10ms not accumulation		
XC5	Т	T300~T399: 10ms accumulation	640	
XCM		T400~T499: 1ms not accumulation		
		T500~T599: 1ms accumulation		
		T600~T639: 1ms with precise time		

Function

The timers accumulate the 1ms, 10ms, 10ms clock pulse, the output contactor activates when the accumulation reaches the set value;

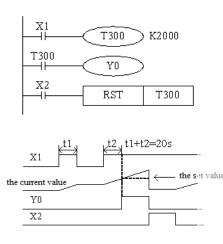
We use OUT or TMR instruction to time for the **normal** timers. We use constant (K) to set the value, or use data register (D) to indirect point the set value;

Normal Type



- If X0 is ON, then T200 accumulate 10ms clock pulse based on the current value; when the accumulation value reaches the set value K200, the timer's output contact activates. I.e. the output contact activates 2s later. If X0 breaks, the timer resets, the output contact resets;
- Both OUT and TMR can realize the time function. But if use OUT, the start time is 0; if use TMR, the start time is 1 scan cycle

Accumulation Type

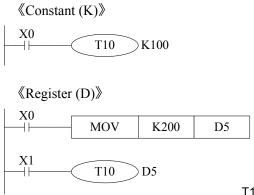


If X001 is ON, then T300 accumulate 10ms clock pulse based on the current value; when the accumulation value reaches the set value K2000, the timer's output contact activates. I.e. the output contact activates 2s later.

Even if X0 breaks, the timer will continue to accumulate on re-starting. The accumulation time is 20ms;

If X002 is ON, the timer will be reset, the output contacts reset;

Specify the set value



Write the indirect data register the contents of the data memory indirect pre-written program or through the switch input values.

In keeping with the register specified as a power outage, please pay attention to the battery voltage, if less than the value set will result in an unstable situation.

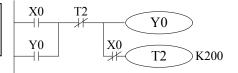
T10 is the timer with 100ms as the unit. Specify 100 as the constant, then 0.1s*100=10s timer works;

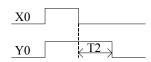
Timer Value

Timer T0~T599 is 16 bits linear increment mode (0~K32,767), when the timer's value reaches the max value K32767, it stops timing. The timer's status keeps still;

(Output Delay off timer)

Action Example

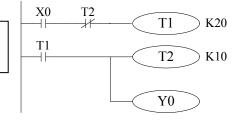


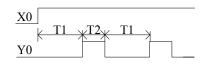


X000 is ON, the output Y000;

When the X000 by the ON \rightarrow OFF, it will delay T2 (20 seconds) time, the output Y000 was disconnected. (Flicker)

Counter







2-8 Counter (C)

Number List

XC Series PLCs - all decimal counter C to be addressed, for series of numbers see the table below:

SERIES	NAME	RANGE	
SERIES	INAIVIE	FOR COMMON USE	POINTS
		C0~C23: 16 bits forward counter	
		C300~C315: 32 bits forward/backward counter	
XC1	С	C600~C603: single-phase HSC	48
		C620~C621	
		C630~C631	
YO0		C0~C299: 16 bits forward counter	
XC2 XC3		C300~C599: 32 bits forward/backward counter	
XC5	С	C600~C619: single-phase HSC	640
XCM		C620~C629: double-phase HSC	
XOIVI		C630~C639: AB phase HSC	

The number of counters on the following principles:

TYPE	DESCRIPTION
16 bits forward counter	C0~C299
32 bits forward/backward	C300~C599 (C300,C302C598)(each occupies 2 counters number)
counter	the number should be even
UCC (High Chood Counter)	C600~C634(C600,C602C634)((each occupies 2 counters number)
HSC (High Speed Counter)	the number should be even

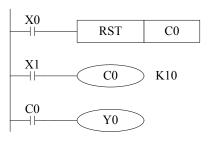
※1 : On high-speed counter usage, see Chapter 5.

Items	16 bits counter	32 bits counter	
Count direction	Positive	Positive/negative	
The set value	1~32,767	-2,147,483,648~+2,147,483,647	
The assigned set value	Constant K or data registe	Same as the left, but data register must be in a	
The assigned set value	Constant K or data registe	couple	
Changing of the current value	Change after positive cour	nt Change after positive count (Loop counter)	
Output contact	Hold the action after posit	ive Hold the action after positive count, reset if	
Output contact	count	negative count	
Reset activates	When executing RST command, counter's current value is 0, output contact		
Reset activates	recover		
The current value register	16 bits	? bits	

Function

The assignment of common use counters and power off retentive counters can me changed via FD parameters from peripheral devices;

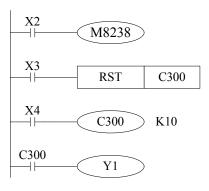
16 bits binary increment counters, the valid value is K1~K32,767 (decimal type constant). The set value K0 and K1 has the same meaning. i.e. the output contact works on the first count starts



If you cut off the power programmable controller, the general count of the counter is cleared, and the latched counter can be used to store the count value before the power outage, so the last time the counter value according to the cumulative count.

- X001 count input C0 of each drive coil once the counter current value plus 1, the coil in the implementation of the tenth command, the output contact action.
 Enter the X001 again after the counter movement, counter current value will continue to add 1.
- If the reset input X000 is ON, the RST instruction is executed, the counter's current value is 0, reset input contact.
- Counter set value, in addition to the constant K set, but also by the data register number specified. For example, specify the D10, if the contents of D10 to 123, then set the K123 with the same time.
- In a MOV instruction to set the value of such data is written above the current value register, then the next input, the output coil connected to the current value into a register set value.

32-bit binary up / down counter set value range for the $\pm 2,147,483,648 \sim -2,147,483,647$ (decimal constant). The use of special auxiliary relay M8238 specified by the count of all 32-bit up / down counter (C300 \sim C498) direction.



- If the X2 driver M8238, was counting down; was not driven by the count.
- According to constant K D of the content or data register, setting the value is positive. The even number data register as a pair, as 32-bit data processing. Thus, when the designated D0, D1 and D0 two 32-bit settings as a treatment. C300 X004 driver using the input coil count when the up / down counting.
- If the reset input X3 is ON, the RST instruction is executed, the current value of the counter becomes 0, the output contact is reset.
- Use for Latched counter, the counter's current value, the output contacts reset state action and latched.
- 32-bit counter can also be used as a 32-bit data register.

Settings

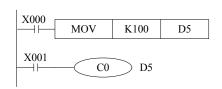
Count of the specified 16-bit and 32 bits is divided into two cases discussed.

16-bit counter

"Constant specified (K)"

"Indirect designated (D)



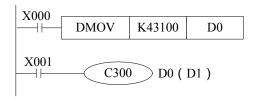


> 32-bit counter

"Constant specified (K)"

X001 C300 K43,100

"Indirect designated (D)



Count

Counter C0 \sim C299 counting mode is 16-bit linear increment mode (0 \sim K32, 767), when the counter reaches the maximum count K32, 767 will stop the clock, the counter remains unchanged.

Counter C300 \sim C599 counting mode is 32-bit linear add / drop mode (-2,147,483,648 +2,147,483,647), when the counter reaches its maximum count value increment K2, 147,483,647 will become K-2, 147,483,648, when the counter counts down to minimum K-2, 147,483,648 will become K2, 147,483,647, the state of the counter with the count should change.

PLC Software Manual Page 43 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



2-9 Data Register (D)

Number List

XC Series PLCs - all data register D to be addressed in decimal, for series of numbers see the table below:

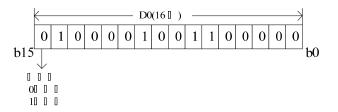
			RANGE					
SERIES	NAME	FOR COMMON USE	FOR POWER OFF	FOR SPECIAL USE				
		T ON COMMON COL	RETENTIVE USE	TOR OF LOIAL GOL	OL .			
				D8000~D8029				
				D8060~D8079				
V04	D	D0 D00	D400 D440	D8120~D8179	138			
XC1		D0~D99	D100~D149	D8240~D8249				
				D8306~D8313				
				D8460~D8469				
VCO	D	D0 D000	D4000 D4000	D8000~D8511	640			
XC2	D	D0~D999	D4000~D4999	D8630~D8729	612			
XC3	D	D0~D3999	D4000~D7999	D8000~D9023	1024			
XC5	U	Du~D3999	D4000~D7999	D6000~D9023	1024			
XCM	D	D0~D2999	D3000~D4999	D8000~D9023	1024			

Structure

Data register is used to store data devices, including 16-bit (MSB is sign bit), 32 (a combination of two data registers, the MSB is sign bit) of two types.

16-bit data register's value is within the range of -32,768 to +32,767

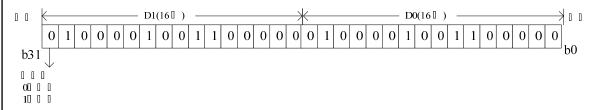
Sixtee



Read and write data register values commonly used application instructions. In addition, through other devices, such as man-machine interface to the PLC to write or read values.

The data from the two adjacent 32-bit data registers (high word in the post, the low word first, as D1D0 composition, D0 for the next bit, D1 is upper). Processing range is -2,147,483,648 to 2,147,483,647 values.

Thirty-two



In the specified 32-bit register, if specified low as D0, the default of its high for the subsequent D1. Low can be odd or even any of the device to specify, but for the convenience, we recommend the use of even lower device number.

Function

General Use

- When the data register to write successfully, just not re-write, then the data in the register will remain unchanged.
- When the PLC goes from RUN to STOP or STOP to RUN, all data will be cleared.

Latched

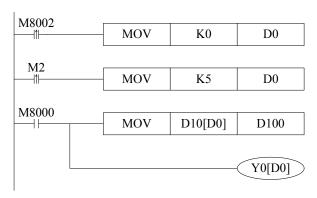
- ➤ Latched area of data registers in the PLC from RUN to STOP or power failure, the data remains unchanged.
- Latched area range, can be set by the user.

Special Use

- Special register is used to write with the specific purpose of data, or specific content is written by the system data.
- Some special registers in the data, the PLC is powered on, is initialized.

As the offset (indirect specify)

- D data register can be used as an offset the device, making the device easier to use and easy to control.
- Format: Dn [Dm], Xn [Dm], Yn [Dm], Mn [Dm] and so on.
- ➢ Bit device composed of the word offset: DXn [Dm] said DX [n + Dm].
- Device with offset, the offset is only available device D said.

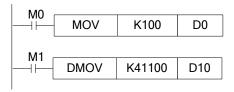


The above example, when D0 = 0, the point D100 = D10, Y0 is ON; When the M2 the OFF \rightarrow ON,, D0 = 5, then D100 = D15, Y5 is ON. Which D10 [D0] = D [10 + D0], Y0 [D0] = Y [0 + D0].

Example Action

Data register D can handle a variety of data, the data register can be achieved through a variety of control.

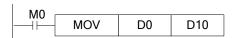
Data Storage



M0 is turned on, write to the D0 16-bit, decimal number 100.

M1 is turned on, to D11D10 write 32-bit decimal number 41100. As the value of 41100 is 32 bits (over 32,767), and therefore store data, although designated as D10, but D11 is also automatically occupied.

Data Transfer



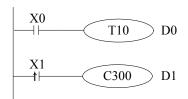
M0 is switched on, the D0 of the data transfer to the D10.

Read Timer or Counter



M0 is switched on, the counter current value of C10 in the D0 in reading.

As a Timer or Counter Set Value



X0 is switched on, T10 start time, regular time determined by the value in D0.

X1 is switched on every time, C300 starts counting, the count is determined by the D1.



2-10 Constant (K, H)

Data Processing

XC Series programmable controllers can be utilized for different uses and purposes, they use of five types of number system, each role and functions are as follows:

> 10 decimal (DEC: DECIMAL NUMBER)

- timer and counter set value (K constant)
- > Auxiliary relay (M), timer (T), counter (C), state (S) such number (device number)
- Application of the instruction operands specifying the values and command action (K constant)

> 16 Hexadecimal (HEX: HEXADECIMAL NUMBER)

and 10 hexadecimal numbers, as used to specify the application of the instruction operands and instruction moves the value (H constant)

2 binary number (BIN: BINARY NUMBER)

As mentioned earlier, to decimal or hexadecimal number for the timer, counter values or data register specified in its internal programmable control, these figures are the number of binary processing. Moreover, in the external device monitoring, these devices will be automatically converted to decimal (which can also switch to hexadecimal).

> 8 binary numbers (OCT: OCTAL NUMBER)XC

Series programmable controller input relay, output relay device number to octal values to assign, therefore, can be [0-7,10-17,...70-77,100-107] into the position.

> BCD code (BCD: BINARY CODE DECIMAL)BCD

4-bit binary decimal number you from 0 to 9 numerical method. The processing of each bit is easy, therefore, can be used for BCD output switch or the shape of seven segment digital display controls and so on.

Other values (floating point)

XC programmable controller can be precision floating point functions.Binary floating-point floating-point operations, while monitoring the implementation of decimal floating-point values.

PLC Software Manual Page 47 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

Representation

Value of the PLC program processing, you must use a constant K, H. Generally used to refer to decimal K, H refer to the hexadecimal number, but the PLC input and output relays with octal numbers.

Constant K

K is the symbol that a decimal integer, such as K10, expressed in decimal 10. It is
used for the specified timer, counter settings, and application instructions and
number of operations.

Constant H

 H is the hex number of symbols, such as H10, is the hex number 10. Mainly used to specify the application instruction operand values.

PLC Software Manual Page 48 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



2-11 Program Principle

● Tag P、I

Tag P、I are used in branch division and interruption.

Tag for branch (P) is used in condition jump or subroutine's jump target;

Tag for interruption (I) is used to specify the e input interruption, time interruption;

The tags P, I are both in decimal form, each coding principle is listed below:

SERIES	NAME	RANGE
XC1、XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM	Р	P0~P9999

SERIES					RANGE	
		FOR EXTERNAL INTERRUPTION				
	NAME	Innut	Dising odgo	Falling	For time interruption	
		Input terminals	lls interruption	edge	For time interruption	
				interruption		
		X2	10000	10001	There are 10 channels time interruption, the	
XC2	- 1	X5	10100	I0101	represent method is: I40**~I49**. ("**"	
		X10	10200	10201	represents interruption time, the unit is mm)	

						RANGE
SERIES	NAME	I/O	FOR EXT	ERNAL INTE	RRUPTION	
SERIES	INAIVIE	1/0	Input	Rising edge	Falling edge	For time interruption
			terminals	interruption	interruption	
		14	X7	10000	10001	
		0.4	X2	10000	10001	
		24 32	X5	I0100	I0101	There are 10 channels time interruption,
XC3	I	32	X10	10200	10201	the represent method is: I40**~I49**. ("**"
		19	X10	10000	10001	represents interruption time, the unit is mm)
		48	X7	I0100	I0101	
		60	X6	10200	10201	

PLC Software Manual Page 49 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

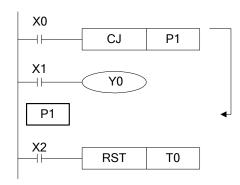
						RANGE
			FOR EXTERNAL			
SERIES	NIANAE	I/O	IN ⁻	TERRUPTIO	NC	
SERIES	INAIVIE	1/0	Innut	Rising	Falling	For time interruption
			Input terminals	edge	edge	
			terrilliais	interruption	interruption	
		24 32	X2	10000	10001	
			X5	10100	10101	
			X10	10200	10201	There are 10 showneds times intermention the
XC5				X11	10300	10301
XC5	ı		X12	10400	10401	
		48	X2	10000	10001	represents interruption time, the unit is mm)
			X5	I0100	I0101	
		60	X10	10200	10201	

			RANGE			RANGE
			FO	OR EXTERNAL		
SERIES	NIANAE	I/O	IN ⁻	TERRUPTIO	NC	
SERIES	INAIVIE	1/0	lanut	Rising	Falling	For time interruption
			Input terminals	edge	edge	
				interruption	interruption	
			X2	10000	10001	
		24	X5	10100	10101	There are 10 channels time interruption, the
XCM	- 1	32	X10	10200	10201	represent method is: I40**~I49**. ("**"
		32	X11	10300	10301	represents interruption time, the unit is mm)
			X12	10400	10401	

PLC Software Manual Page 50 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

Tag P is usually used in flow, it is used with CJ (condition jump), CALL (subroutine call) etc.

Condition Jump CJ

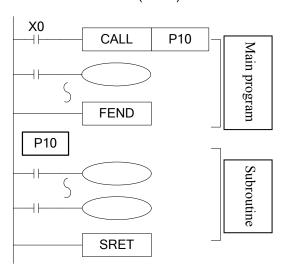


If coil X0 gets ON, jump to the step behind tag P1;

If the coil X0 is not ON, do not execute jump action, but run with the original program;

Tag P

Call the subroutine (CALL)



If X0 becomes ON, jump to the subroutine from the main program; If the coil is not ON, run with the original program;

After executing the subroutine, return to the main program;

LMAN021_R2V2

Tag I is usually used in interruption, including external interruption, time interruption etc. use with IRET (interruption return), EI (enable interruption), DI (disable interruption);

External interruption

- Accepts input signal from the special input terminals, not effected by the scan cycle. Activates the input signal, executes the interruption subroutine.
- With external interruption, PLC can dispose the signal shorter than scan cycle; so it can be used as essential priority disposal in sequence control, or used in short time pulse control.

Time interruption

Execute the interruption subroutine at each specified interruption loop time. Use this interruption in the control which requires it to be different with PLC's operation cycle.

Action order of input/output relays and response delay

Input disposal

Before PLC executing the program, read all the input terminal's ON/OFF status of PLC to the image area. In the process of executing the program, even the input changed, the content in the input image area will not change. However, in the input disposal of next scan cycle, read out the change.

Output disposal

PLC Software Manual

Once finished executing all the instructions, transfer the ON/OFF status of output Y image area to the output lock memory area. This will be the actual output of the PLC. The contacts used for the PLC's exterior output will act according to the device's response delay time.

When using this input/output format in a batch, the drive time and operation cycle of input filter and output device will also appear as per the response delay.

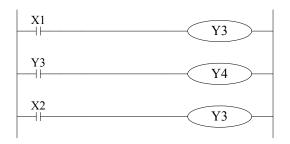
Page 52 of 365

LMAN021_R2V2

Not accept narrow input pulse signal

PLC's input ON/OFF time should be longer than its loop time. E.g. if input filter's response delay 10ms, loop time is 10ms, then ON/OFF time needs 20 ms separately. So, up to 1, 000/(20+20)=25Hz input pulse can't be disposed. But, this condition could be improved when use PLC's special function and applied instructions.

• Dual output (Dual coils) action



When executing dual output (use dual coil), the back side act in prior.

As shown in the left map, please consider the things of using the same coil Y003 at many positions:

E.g. X001=ON, X002=OFF

At first, X001 is ON, its image area is ON, output Y004 is also ON.

But, as input X002 is OFF, the image area of Y003 is OFF.

So, the actual output is: Y003=OFF, Y004= ON.

PLC Software Manual Page 53 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

3

Basic Program Instructions

In this chapter, we give the basic instructions and their functions.

3-1 . Basic Instructions List
3-2 . [LD], [LDI], [OUT]
3-3 . [AND], [ANI]
3-4 . [OR], [ORI]
3-5 . [LDP], [LDF], [ANDP], [ANDF], [ORP], [ORF]
3-6 . [LDD], [LDDI]
3-7 . [ORB]
3-8 . [ANB]
3-9 . [MCS], [MCR]
3-10 . [ALT]
3-11 . [PLS], [PLF]
3-12 . [SET], [RST]

3-13 . [OUT], [RST] (Aim at counter device)

3-14 . [NOP], [END]

3-15 . [GROUP], [GROUPE]

3-16 . Programming Notes

3-1 Basic Instructions List

All XC1, XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM series support the instructions below:

Mnemonic	Function	Format and Device	Chapter
LD (LoaD)	Initial logical operation contact type NO (normally open)	X, Y, M, S, T, C, Dn.m, FDn.m	3-2
LDD (LoaD Directly)	Read the status from the contact directly	X0 X	3-6
LDI (LoaD Inverse)	Initial logical operation contact type NC (normally closed)	X, Y, M, S, T, C, Dn.m, FDn.m	3-2
LDDI	Read the normally closed contact directly	X X X	3-6
LDP (LoaD Pulse)	Initial logical operation-Rising edge pulse	TLSO MO PLSR DO D2 D4 YO FLSR DO D2 D4 YO STLE X, Y, M, S, T, C, Dn.m, FDn.m	3-5
LDF (LoaD Falling Pulse)	Initial logical operation-Falling /trailing edge pulse	X, Y, M, S, T, C, Dn.m, FDn.m	3-5
AND (AND)	Serial connection of NO (normally open) contacts	X, Y, M, S, T, C, Dn.m, FDn.m	3-3
ANDD	Read the status from the contact directly	X X X X X X X X X X X X X X X X X X X	3-6

ANI	Serial connection of NC		3-3
(AND Inverse)	(normally closed) contacts	$\left(\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{S} & \cdot \end{array} \right)$	
		X、Y、M、S、T、C、Dn.m、FDn.m	
ANDDI	Read the normally closed	X0	3-6
	contact directly		
		X	
ANDP	Serial connection of rising	^	3-5
(AND Pulse)	edge pulse	\bigcirc D \bigcirc	
		X、Y、M、S、T、C、Dn.m、FDn.m	
ANDF	Serial connection of		3-5
(AND Falling	falling/trailing edge pulse	\mid	
pulse)			
		X、Y、M、S、T、C、Dn.m、FDn.m	
OR	Parallel connection of NO		3-4
(OR)	(normally open) contacts	$\left(\begin{array}{ccc} D & \cdot \end{array} \right)$	
		X、Y、M、S、T、C、Dn.m、FDn.m	
ORD	Read the status from the		3-6
	contact directly		
		X	
ORI	Parallel connection of NC		3-4
(OR Inverse)	(normally closed) contacts	\bigcirc D \bigcirc	
		X、Y、M、S、T、C、Dn.m、FDn.m	
ORDI	Read the normally closed		3-6
	contact directly	Xo Ip	
ORP	Parallel connection of rising	X	3-5
(OR Pulse)	edge pulse	M0 M0	3-3
,			
		X、Y、M、S、T、C、Dn.m、FDn.m	
		Z. T. M. O. T. O. BILIN, I BILIN	

LMAN021_R2V2

ORF	Parallel connection of		3-5
(OR Falling	falling/trailing edge pulse	$\left(\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{S} & \cdot \end{array}\right)$	
pulse)			
		X、Y、M、S、T、C、Dn.m、FDn.m	
		X Y W, O, Y, O, Billin, I Billin	
ANB	Serial connection of multiply		3-8
(ANd Block)	parallel circuits	$\left(\begin{array}{ccc} D & \cdot \end{array}\right)$	
		Nama	
ORB	Parallel connection of	None	3-7
(OR Block)	multiply parallel circuits	$\bigcirc D$ \cdot	3-7
(OTT BIOOK)	manipry paramer on oute	D	
		None	
OUT	Final logic operation type coil	D	3-2
(OUT)	drive		
		Y、M、S、T、C、Dn.m	
		TV WV OV TV OV BILLIN	
OUTD	Output to the contact directly	(Y0)	3-6
		Y	
SET	Set a bit device permanently		3-12
(SET)	ON	\bigcirc D \cdot	0 12
(-)			
		V M C T C Date	
		Y、M、S、T、C、Dn.m	
RST	Reset a bit device	RST Y0	3-12
(ReSeT)	permanently OFF	KSI IV	
		Y、M、S、T、C、Dn.m	
PLS	Rising edge pulse		3-11
(PuLSe)	Rising edge pulse	PLS Y0	3-11
(1 4200)			
		X、Y、M、S、T、C、Dn.m	
PLF	Falling/trailing edge pulse	NE VO	3-11
(PuLse		PLF Y0	
Falling)			
		X、Y、M、S、T、C、Dn.m	

MCS	Connect the public serial	Y0	3-9
(New bus line	contacts		
start)			
		None	
MCR	Clear the public serial	YO	3-9
(Bus line	contacts		
return)			
		None	
ALT	The status of the assigned	ALT M0	3-10
(Alternate	device is inverted on every	TALL INIO	
state)	operation of the instruction	X, Y, M, S, T, C, Dn.m	
		AC TO MIC OC TO OC BILLIN	
END	Force the current program	X 1 B M O V D 1 0 D 9 K 3	3-14
(END)	scan to end	X 2 B M O V D 1 0 D 1 1 K 3	
		None	
GROUP	Group	GROUP	3-15
		None	
GROUPE	Group End	X0	3-15
		None	
TMD	T:	None	0.7
TMR	Time	T0 K10	2-7

3-2 [LD], [LDI], [OUT]

Mnemonic and Function

Mnemonic	Function	Format and Operands
LD (LoaD)	Initial logic operation contact type NO (Normally Open)	M0
		Operands: X、Y、M、S、T、C、Dn.m、FDn.m
LDI (LoaD Inverse)	Initial logic operation contact type NC (Normally Closed)	Devices: X, Y, M, S, T, C, Dn.m, FDn.m
OUT (OUT)	Final logic operation type drive coil	Operands: X, Y, M, S, T, C, Dn.m

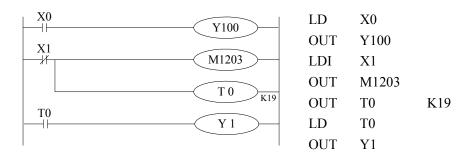
Statements

- Connect the LD and LDI instructions directly to the left bus bar, or use them to define a new block of program when using ANB instruction.
- OUT instruction is the coil drive instruction for the output relays, auxiliary relays, status, timers, counters. But this instruction can't be used for the input relays
- Can not sequentially use parallel OUT command for many times.
- For the timer's time coil or counter's count coil, after using OUT instruction, set constant K is necessary.

• For the constant K's setting range, actual timer constant, program's step relative to OUT instruction (include the setting value), See table below:

Timer, Counter	Setting Range of constant K	The actual setting value
1ms Timer		0.001 ~ 32.767 sec
10ms Timer	1 ~ 32,767	0.01 ~ 327.67 sec
100ms Timer		0.1 ~ 3276.7 sec
16 bits counter	1 ~ 32,767	Same as the left
32 bits counter	1~2,147,483,647	Same as the left

Program



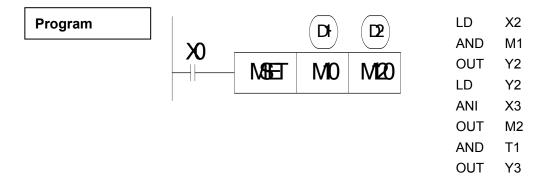
3-3 [AND], [ANI]

Mnemonic and Function

Mnemonic	Function	Format and Operands
AND (AND)	Serial connection of NO (Normally Open) contacts	X2 FWRT D0 FD0 K3
		Operands: X、Y、M、S、T、C、Dn.m、FDn.m
ANI (ANd Inverse)	Serial connection of NC (Normally Closed) contacts	M0
		Operands: X、Y、M、S、T、C、Dn.m、FDn.m

Statements

- Use the AND and the ANI instruction for serial connection of contacts. As many contacts as required can be connected in series. They can be used for many times.
- The output processing to a coil, through writing the initial OUT instruction is called a "follow-on" output (For an example see the program below: OUT M2 and OUT Y003). Follow-on outputs are permitted repeatedly as long as the output order is correct. There's no limit for the serial connected contacts' Nr. and follow-on outputs' number.



3-4 [OR], [ORI]

Mnemonic and Function

Mnemonic	Function	Format and Operands
OR (OR)	Parallel connection of NO (Normally Open) contacts	D 2 ·
		Operands: X、Y、M、S、T、C、Dn.m、FDn.m
ORI (OR Inverse)	Parallel connection of NC (Normally Closed) contacts	D 1 ·
		Operands: X、Y、M、S、T、C、Dn.m、FDn.m

Statements

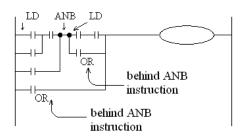
- Use the OR and ORI instructions for parallel connection of contacts. To connect a block that contains more than one contact connected in series to another circuit block in parallel, use an ORB instruction, which will be described later;
- OR and ORI start from the instruction's step, parallel connect with the LD and LDI instruction's step said before. There is no limit for the parallel connect times.

Program



LD	X5
OR	X6
OR	M11
OUT	Y6
LDI	Y6
AND	M4
OR	M12
ANI	X7
OR	M13
OUT	M100

Relationship with ANB



The parallel connection with OR, ORI instructions should connect with LD, LDI instructions in principle. But behind the ANB instruction, it's still ok to add a LD or LDI instruction.

PLC Software Manual Page 63 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

3-5 [LDP], [LDF], [ANDP], [ANDF], [ORP], [ORF]

Mnemonic and Function

Mnemonic	Function	Format and Operands
LDP (LoaD Pulse)	Initial logical operation-Rising edge pulse	D 1 ·
		Operands: X、Y、M、S、T、C、Dn.m、FDn.m
LDF (LoaD Falling pulse)	Initial logical operation Falling/trailing edge pulse	Operands: X, Y, M, S, T, C, Dn.m, FDn.m
ANDP (AND Pulse)	Serial connection of Rising edge pulse	D 1 ·
		Operands: X、Y、M、S、T、C、Dn.m、FDn.m
ANDF (AND Falling pulse)	Serial connection of Falling/trailing edge pulse	X 0
		Operands: X、Y、M、S、T、C、Dn.m、FDn.m
ORP (OR Pulse)	Parallel connection of Rising edge pulse	D 2 ·
		Operands: X、Y、M、S、T、C、Dn.m、FDn.m
ORF (OR Falling pulse)	Parallel connection of Falling/trailing edge pulse	D 1 ·
		Operands: X、Y、M、S、T、C、Dn.m、FDn.m

PLC Software Manual Page 64 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

Statements

- LDP, ANDP, ORP are active for one program scan after the associated devices switch from OFF to ON.
- LDF, ANDF, ORF are active for one program scan after the associated devices switch from ON to OFF.

Program D 2 ·

LDP X5
ORP X6
OUT M13
LD M8000
ANDP X7
OUT M15

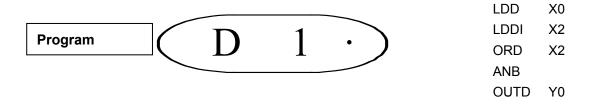
3-6 [LDD], [LDDI], [ANDD], [ANDDI], [ORD], [ORDI], [OUTD]

Mnemonic and Function

Mnemonic	Function	Format and Operands
LDD	Read the status from the contact directly	
		Devices: X
LDDI	Read the normally closed contact directly	X0
		Devices: X
ANDD	Read the status from the contact directly	
		Devices: X
ANDDI	Read the normally closed contact directly	
		Devices: X
ORD	Read the status from the contact directly	X0 D
		Devices: X
ORDI	Read the normally closed contact directly	X0
		Devices: X
OUTD	Output to the contact directly	(Y0)
		Devices: Y

Statements

- The function of LDD, ANDD, ORD instructions are similar with LD, AND, OR;
- LDDI, ANDDI, ORDI instructions are similar with LDI, ANDI, ORI; but if the operand is X, the LDD, ANDD, ORD commands read the signal from the terminals directly, this is the only difference.
- OUTD and OUT are output instructions. But if OUTD is used, output immediately if the condition comes true, needn't wait the next scan cycle.



PLC Software Manual Page 67 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

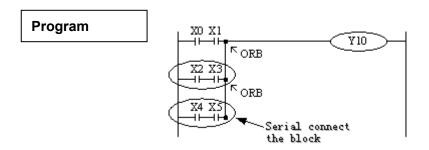
3-7 [ORB]

Mnemonic and Function

Mnemonic	Function	Format and Devices
ORB	Parallel connection of	\bigcap
(OR Block)	multiply parallel	$\bigcup_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j=1}^{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j=1}^{n} \sum_{j=1}^{n} \sum_{j=1}^{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j=1}^{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j=1}^{n} \sum_{j$
	circuits	Devices: none

Statements

- The serial connection with two or more contacts is called "serial block". If parallel connect the serial block, use LD, LDI at the branch start place, use ORB at the stop place;
- As the ANB instruction, an ORB instruction is an independent instruction and is not associated with any device number.
- There are no limitations to the number of parallel circuits when using an ORB instruction in the sequential processing configuration.



Recommended good programming method :

LD X0 AND X1 LD X2 AND Х3 ORB LD X4 AND X5 ORB OUT Y10 Non-preferred batch programming method :

LD X0
AND X1
LD X2
AND X3
LD X4
AND X5
ORB
ORB

3-8 [ANB]

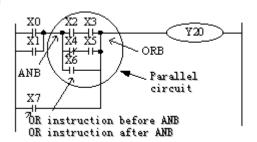
Mnemonic and Function

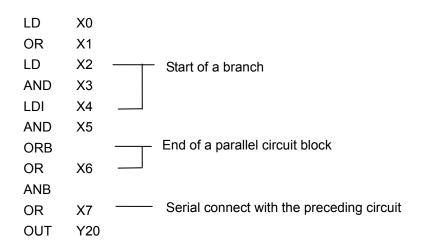
Mnemonic	Function	Format and Devices
ANB	Serial	$(D_1, 2, \dots)$
(And Block)	connection of	D = 2
	multiply parallel	Devices: none
	circuits	

Statements

- (1) To declare the starting point of the circuit block, use a LD or LDI instruction. After completing the parallel circuit block, connect it to the preceding block in series using the ANB instruction.
- (2) It is possible to use as many ANB instructions as necessary to connect a number of parallel circuit blocks to the preceding block in series.

Program





PLC Software Manual Page 69 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

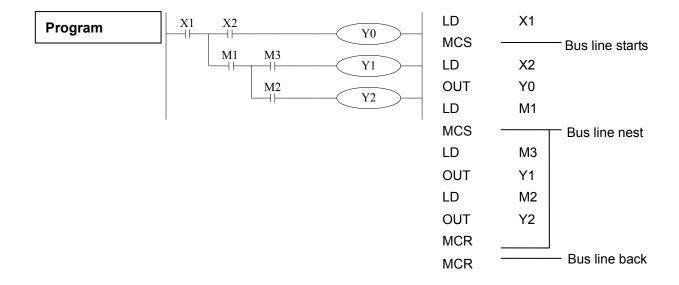
3-9 [MCS], [MCR]

Mnemonic and Function

Mnemonic	Function	Format and Devices
MCS	Denotes the	
(Master	start of a master	$(D1\cdot)$
control)	control block	
		Devices : None
MCR	Denotes the	Y0 —
(Master	end of a master	
control	control block	
Reset)		Devices : None

Statements

- After the execution of an MCS instruction, the bus line (LD, LDI) shifts to a point after the MCS instruction. An MCR instruction returns this to the original bus line.
- MCS, MCR instructions should use in pair.
- The bus line could be used nesting. Between the matched MCS, MCR instructions use matched MCS, MCR instructions. The nest level increase with the using of MCS instruction. The max nest level is 10. When executing MCR instruction, go back to the upper bus line.
- When use flow program, bus line management could only be used in the same flow. When end some flow, it must go back to the main bus line.



PLC Software Manual Page 70 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

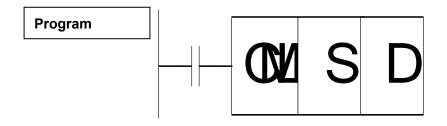
3-10 [ALT]

Mnemonic and Function

Mnemonic	Function	Format and Devices
ALT	The status of the	
(Alternate	assigned devices	ALT M0
status)	inverted on every	
	operation of the	Devices V. M. O. T. O. Dr. ve
	instruction	Devices: Y, M, S, T, C, Dn.m

Statements

The status of the destination device is alternated on every operation of the ALT instruction.



LDP	M100
ALT	MO
LD	MO
OUT	Y0
LDI	MO
OUT	Y1

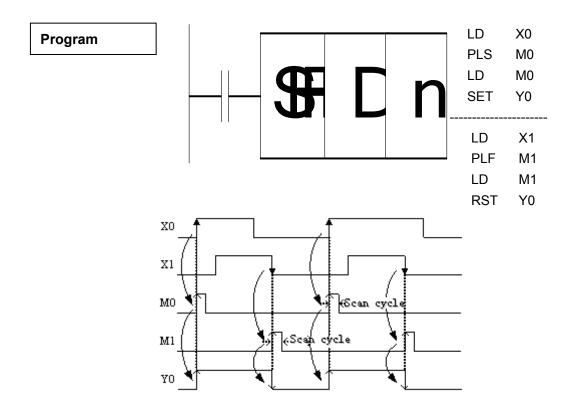
3-11 [PLS], [PLF]

Mnemonic and Function

Mnemonic	Function	Format and Devices
PLS (Pulse)	Rising edge pulse	NEG D
		Devices: Y, M, S, T, C, Dn.m
PLF (Pulse Falling)	Falling/trailing edge pulse	├──├─────────────────────────────────
		Devices: Y、M、S、T、C、Dn.m

Statements

- 1. When a PLS instruction is executed, object devices Y and M operate for one operation cycle after the drive input signal has turned ON.
- 2. When a PLF instruction is executed, object devices Y and M operate for one operation cycle after the drive input signal has turned OFF.



3-12 [SET], [RST]

Mnemonic and Function

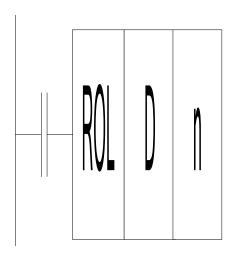
Mnemonic	Function	Format and Devices
SET (Set)	Set a bit device permanently ON	LSL D n
		Devices: Y, M, S, T, C, Dn.m
RST(Reset)	Reset a bit device permanently	LSR D n
	OFF	Devices: Y、M、S、T、C、Dn.m

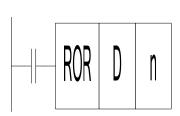
Statements

Turning ON X010 causes Y000 to turn ON. Y000 remains ON even after X010 turns OFF. Turning ON X011 causes Y000 to turn OFF. Y000 remains OFF even after X011 turns OFF. It's the same with M, S.

- SET and RST instructions can be used for the same device as many times as necessary. However, the last instruction activated determines the current status.
- It is also possible to use RST instruction to reset the current contents of timer, counter and contacts.
- When use SET, RST commands, avoid to use the same ID with OUT command.

Program





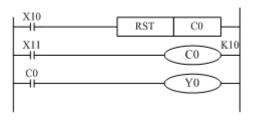
LD	X10	
SET	Y0	
LD	X11	
RST	Y0	
LD	X12	
SET	M50	
LD	X13	
RST	M50	
LD	X14	
SET	S0	
LD	X15	
RST	S0	
LD	X10	
OUT	T250	K10
LD	X17	
RST	T250	

3-13 [OUT], [RST] for the counters

Mnemonic and Function

Mnemonic	Function	Format and Devices
OUT	Final logic operation type coil drive	
RST	Reset a bit device permanently OFF	Device : C

Programming of interior counter



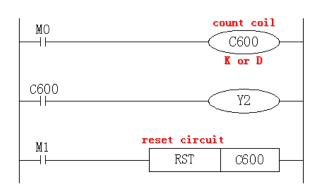
Counter used for power cut retentive. Even when power is cut, hold the current

value and output contact's action status and reset status.

C0 carries on increase count for the OFF→ON of X011. When the set value K10 is reached, output contact C0 activates. Afterwards, even X011 turns from OFF to ON, counter's current value will not change, output contact keep on activating.

To clear this, let X010 be the activate status and reset the output contact. It's necessary to assign constant K or indirect data register's ID behind OUT instruction.

Programming of high speed



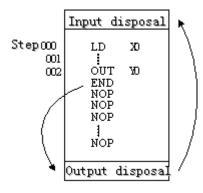
- In the preceding example, when M0 is ON, carry on positive count with OFF→ON of X0.
- Counter's current value increase, when it reaches the set value (K or D), the output contact is reset.
- When M1 is ON, counter's C600 output contact is reset, counter's current value turns to be 0.

3-14 [END]

Mnemonic and Function

Mnemonic	Function	Format and Devices : None
END (END)	Force the current program	
	scan to end	Devices: None

Statements



PLC repeatedly performs input disposal, program executing and output disposal. If write END instruction at the end of the program, then the instructions behind END instruction won't be executed. If there's no END instruction in the program, the PLC executes the end step and then repeat executing the program from step 0. When debug, insert END in each program segment to check out each program's action. Then, after confirm the correction of preceding block's action, delete END instruction. Besides, the first execution of RUN begins with

When executing END instruction, refresh monitor timer. (Check if scan cycle is a long timer.)

END instruction.

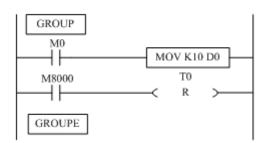
3-15 [GROUP], [GROUPE]

Mnemonic and Function

Mnemonic	Function	Format and Device		
GROUP	GROUP	WSFR S D n1 n2		
		Devices: None		
GROUPE	GROUP END	WTD S D		
		Devices: None		

Statements

- GROUP and GROUPE should used in pairs.
- GROUP and GROUPE don't have practical meaning, they are used to optimize the program structure. So, add or delete these instructions doesn't effect the program's running.
- The using method of GROUP and GROUPE is similar with flow instructions; enter GROUP instruction at the beginning of group part; enter GROUPE instruction at the end of group part.



Generally, GROUP and GROUPE instruction can be programmed according to the group's function. The programmed instructions can be FOLDED or UNFOLDED. To a redundant project, these two instructions are quite useful.

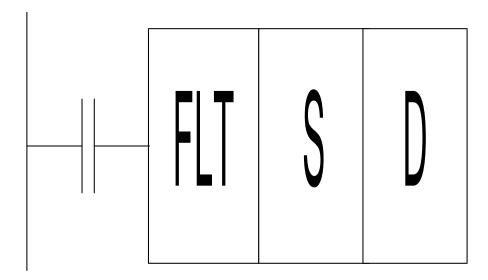
3-16 Programming Notes

1: Program's executing sequence

The program control flow is processed from [From top to bottom] and [From left to right] Sequencial control instructions also encode following this flow.

2: Calling outputs multiple times

See the below example on how to stop this occuring



There are other methods. E.g. jump instructions or step ladder. However, when use step ladder, if the main program's output coil is programmed, then the disposal method is the same with dual coil, please note this.

4

Applied Instructions

In this chapter, we describe the applied instruction's function of XC Series PLC.

4-1 . Table of Applied Instructions
4-2 . Reading Method of Applied Instructions
4-3 . Flow Instructions
4-4 . Contactors Compare Instructions
4-5 . Move Instructions
4-6 . Arithmetic and Logic Operation Instructions
4-7 . Loop and Shift Instructions
4-8 . Data Convert
4-9 . Floating Operation
4-10 . Clock Operation

4-1 Applied Instruction List

Mnemonic	Function	Ladder chart	Chapter
Program Flow	l		
CJ	Condition jump	BSTOP S1 S2	4-3-1
CALL	Call subroutine	BGOON S1 S2	4-3-2
SRET	Subroutine return		4-3-2
STL	Flow start		4-3-3
STLE	Flow end	S 1 ·	4-3-3
SET	Open the assigned flow, close the current flow	(S··)	4-3-3
ST	Open the assigned flow, not close the current flow	D ·	4-3-3
FOR	Start a FOR-NEXT loop	D ·	4-3-4
NEXT	End of a FOR-NEXT loop	D ·	4-3-4
FEND	Main program END	D ·	4-3-5
END	Program END	END	4-3-5

Data Compar	Data Compare				
LD =	LD activates if (S1) = (S2)	S	4-4-1		
LD>	LD activates if (S1) > (S2)	(D ·	4-4-1		
LD <	LD activates if (S1) =< (S2)	D ·	4-4-1		
LD < >	LD activates if (S1) ≠ (S2)	D ·	4-4-1		
LD < =	LD activates if (S1) ≤ (S2)	D ·	4-4-1		
LD > =	LD activates if (S1) ≥ (S2)	LD>= S1 S2	4-4-1		
AND =	AND activates if (S1) = (S2)	AND = S1 S2	4-4-2		
AND >	AND activates if (S1) > (S2)	AND> S1 S2	4-4-2		
AND <	AND activates if (S1) < (S2)	AND< S1 S2	4-4-2		
AND < >	AND activates if (S1) ≠ (S2)	AND S1 S2	4-4-2		
AND < =	AND activates if (S1) ≤ (S2)	AND<= S1 S2	4-4-2		
AND>=	AND activates if (S1) ≥ (S2)	X BMOV D10 D9 K3	4-4-2		
OR=	OR activates if (S1) = (S2)	OR= S1 S2	4-4-3		
OR>	OR activates if (S1) > (S2)	X0	4-4-3		
OR <	OR activates if (S1) < (S2)	OR < S1 S2	4-4-3		
OR < >	OR activates if (S1) ≠ (S2)	OR < > S1 S2	4-4-3		
OR < =	OR activates if (S1) ≤ (S2)	X0	4-4-3		
OR > =	OR activates if (S1) ≥ (S2)	OR >= S1 S2	4-4-3		

Data Move	Data Move			
СМР	Compare the data	CMP S1 S D	4-5-1	
ZCP	Compare the data in certain area	X2	4-5-2	
MOV	Move	MOV S D	4-5-3	
BMOV	Block move	X0 MSET M10 M120	4-5-4	
PMOV	Transfer the Data block	D 2 ·	4-5-5	
FMOV	Multi-points repeat move	D 1 ·	4-5-6	
FWRT	Flash ROM written	D 2 ·	4-5-7	
MSET	Zone set	D 1 ·	4-5-8	
ZRST	Zone reset	D 2 ·	4-5-9	
SWAP	Swap the high and low byte	D 1 ·	4-5-10	
хсн	Exchange two values	2 8 5 T	4-5-11	

Data Operation	Data Operation			
ADD	Addition	D 2 ·	4-6-1	
SUB	Subtraction	D 1 ·	4-6-2	
MUL	Multiplication	D 2 ·	4-6-3	
DIV	Division	D 1 ·	4-6-4	
INC	Increment	D 1 ·	4-6-5	
DEC	Decrement	D 2 ·	4-6-5	
MEAN	Mean	D 1 ·	4-6-6	
WAND	Word And	WAND S1 S2 D	4-6-7	
WOR	Word OR	WOR S1 S2 D	4-6-7	
WXOR	Word exclusive OR	WXOR S1 S2 D	4-6-7	
CML	Compliment	CML S D	4-6-8	
NEG	Negative	NEG D	4-6-9	

Data Shift	Data Shift			
SHL	Arithmetic Shift Left	SHL D n	4-7-1	
SHR	Arithmetic Shift Right	SHR D n	4-7-1	
LSL	Logic shift left	LSL D n	4-7-2	
LSR	Logic shift right	LSR D n	4-7-2	
ROL	Rotation shift left	ROL D n	4-7-3	
ROR	Rotation shift right	ROR D n	4-7-3	
SFTL	Bit shift left	SFTL S D n1 n2	4-7-4	
SFTR	Bit shift right	SFTR S D n1 n2	4-7-5	
WSFL	Word shift left	WSFL S D n1 n2	4-7-6	
WSFR	Word shift right	WSFR S D n1 n2	4-7-7	

Data Convert	Data Convert			
WTD	Single word integer converts to double word integer	WTD S D	4-8-1	
FLT	16 bits integer converts to float point	FLT S D	4-8-2	
DFLT	32 bits integer converts to float point	DFLT S D	4-8-2	
FLTD	64 bits integer converts to float point	FLTD S D	4-8-2	
INT	Float point converts to integer	INT S D	4-8-3	
BIN	BCD converts to binary	BIN S D	4-8-4	
BCD	Binary converts to BCD	BCD S D	4-8-5	
ASCI	Hex. converts to ASCII	ASCI S D n	4-8-6	
HEX	ASCII converts to Hex.	HEX S D n	4-8-7	
DECO	Coding	DECO S D n	4-8-8	
ENCO	High bit coding	ENCO S D n	4-8-9	
ENCOL	Low bit coding	ENCOL S D n	4-8-10	

Float Point O	peration		
ECMP	Float compare	ECMP S1 S2 D	4-9-1
EZCP	Float Zone compare	EZCP S1 S2 D1 D2	4-9-2
EADD	Float Add	EADD S1 S2 D	4-9-3
ESUB	Float Subtract	ESUB S1 S2 D	4-9-4
EMUL	Float Multiplication	EMUL S1 S2 D	4-9-5
EDIV	Float division	EDIV S1 S2 D	4-9-6
ESQR	Float Square Root	ESQR S D	4-9-7
SIN	Sine	SIN S D	4-9-8
cos	Cosine	COS S D	4-9-9
TAN	Tangent	TAN S D	4-9-10
ASIN	Floating Sine	ASIN S D	4-9-11
ACOS	Floating Cosine	ACOS S D	4-9-12
ATAN	Floating Tangent	HI ATAN S D	4-9-13
Clock Operati	on		
TRD	Read RTC data	TRD D	4-10-1
TWR	Write RTC data	TWR D	4-10-2

4-2 Reading Method of Applied Instructions

In this manual, the applied instructions are described in the following manner:

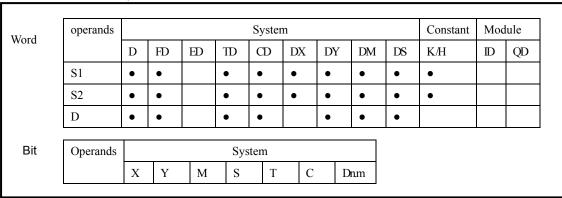
1: Summary

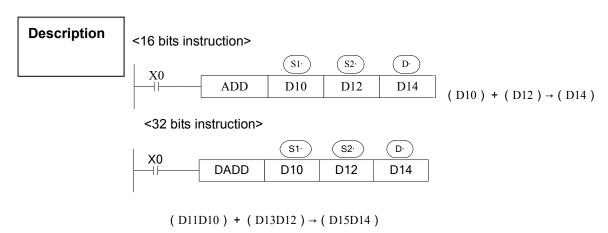
ADDITION [AD	DD]		
16 bits	ADD	32 bits	DADD
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, Rising/Falling	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition	edge	Models	
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
S1	Specify the augend data or register	16 bits/32 bits, BIN
S2	Specify the summand data or register	16 bits/32 bits, BIN
D	Specify the register to store the sum	16 bits/32 bits, BIN

3: .Suitable Soft Components





- 1. The data contained within the two source devices are combined and the total is stored in the specified destination device. Each data's highest bit is the sign bit, 0 stands for positive, 1 stand for negative. All calculations are algebraic processed. (5+(-8)= -3).
- 2. If the result of a calculations is "0", the "0' flag acts. If the result exceeds 323,767(16 bits limit) or 2,147,483,648 (32 bits limit), the carry flag acts. (refer to the next page). If the result exceeds -323,768 (16 bits limit) or -2,147,483,648 (32 bits limit), the borrow flag acts (Refer to the next page).
- 3. When carry on 32 bits operation, word device's 16 bits are assigned, the device follow closely the preceding device's ID will be the high bits. To avoid ID repetition, we recommend you assign device's ID to be even ID.
- 4. The same device may be used a source and a destination. If this is the case then the result changes after every scan cycle. Please note this point.

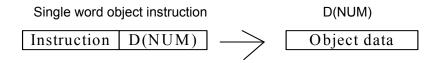
Related Flag

ON : the calculate result is zero
ON . The Calculate result is zero
DFF: the calculate result is not zero
DN: the calculate result is over 32767(16bits) or 2147483647(32bits) DFF: the calculate result is not over 32767(16bits) or 2147483647(32bits)
DN: the calculate result is over 32767(16bits) or 2147483647(32bits)
OFF: the calculate result is not over 32767(16bits) or 2147483647(32bits)
OI OI

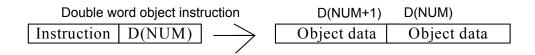
Related Description

The assignment of the data

The data register of XC series PLC is a single word (16 bit) data register, single word data only engross one data register which is assigned by single word object instruction. The disposal bound is: Dec. –327,68~327,67, Hex. 0000~FFFF.



Double word (32 bit) engrosses two data register, it's composed by two consecutive data registers, the first one is assigned by double word object instruction. The dispose bound is:



The denote way of 32 bits instruction

If an instruction can not only be 16 bits but also be 32 bits, then the denote method for 32 bits instruction is to add a "D" before 16 bits instruction.

E.g: ADD D0 D2 D4 denotes two 16 bits data adds;

^{*1 :} Flag after executing the instruction. Instructions without the direct flag will not display.

^{*2: (}S·)Source operand, its content won't change after executing the instruction.

^{×3} : (D·)Destinate operand, its content changes with the execution of the instruction.

^{*4 :} Tell the instruction's basic action, using way, applied example, extend function, note items etc.



4-3 Program Flow Instructions

Mnemonic	Instruction's name	Chapter
CJ	Condition Jump	4-3-1
CALL	Call subroutine	4-3-2
SRET	Subroutine return	4-3-2
STL	Flow start	4-3-3
STLE	Flow end	4-3-3
SET	Open the assigned flow, close the current flow (flow jump)	4-3-3
ST	Open the assigned flow, not close the current flow (Open the new flow)	4-3-3
FOR	Start of a FOR-NEXT loop	4-3-4
NEXT	End of a FOR-NEXT loop	4-3-4
FEND	First End	4-3-5
END	Program End	4-3-5

4-3-1 Condition Jump [CJ]

1: Summary

As used to run a part of program, CJ shorten the operation cycle and using the dual coil

Condition Jump	[CJ]		
16 bits	CJ	32 bits	-
Execution	Normally ON/OFF coil	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition		Models	
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2.Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
Pn	Jump to the target (with pointer Nr.) P (P0~P9999)	Pointer's Nr.

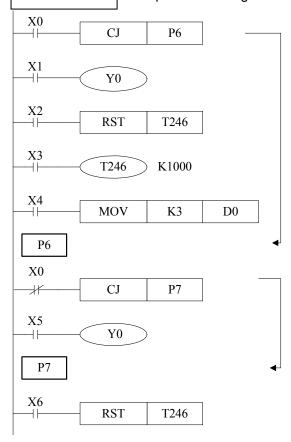
3. Suitable Soft Components

Other Pointer
P I

•

Description

In the below graph, if X000 is "ON", jump from the first step to the next step behind P6 tag. If X000 "OFF", do not execute the jump construction;



- ◆ In the left graph, Y000 becomes to be dual coil output, but when X000=OFF, X001 activates; when X000=ON, X005 activates
- CJ can't jump from one STL to another STL;
- ◆ After driving time T0~T640 and HSC C600~C640, if execute CJ, continue to work, the output activates.

PLC Software Manual Page 91 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

4-3-2 . Call subroutine [CALL] and Subroutine return [SRET]

1: Summary

Call the programs which need to be executed together, decrease the program's steps

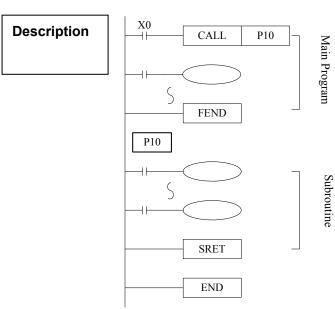
Subroutine Call	[CALL]		
16 bits	CALL	32 bits	-
Execution	Normally ON/OFF,	Suitable Models	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition	Rising/Falling edge		
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	
Subroutine Retu	rn [SRET]		
16 bits	SRET	32 bits	-
Execution	-	Suitable Models	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition			
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2.Operands

Operands	Function							Data Type
Pn	Jump to	o the	target	(with	pointer	Nr.)	Р	Pointer's Nr.
	(P0~P99	99)						

3. Suitable Soft Components





- If X000= "ON", execute the call instruction and jump to the step tagged by P10. after executing the subroutine, return the original step via SRET instruction.Program the tag with FEND instruction (will describe this instruction later)
- In the subroutine 9 times call is allowed, so totally there can be 10 nestings.

PLC Software Manual Page 92 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

4-3-3 Flow [SET], [ST], [STL], [STLE]

1: Summary

Instructions to specify the start, end, open, close of a flow;

Open the specifi	ed flow, close the local f	low [SET]		
16 bits	SET		32 bits	-
Execution	Normally ON/OFF,		Suitable Models	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition	Rising/Falling edge			
Hardware	-		Software	-
requirement			requirement	
Open the specifi	ed flow, not close the lo	cal flow [S	r]	
16 bits	ST		32 bits	-
Execution	Normally	ON/OFF,	Suitable Models	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition	Rising/Falling edge			
Hardware	-		Software	-
requirement			requirement	
Flow starts [STL]			
16 bits	STL		32 bits	-
Execution	-		Suitable Models	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition				
Hardware	-		Software	-
requirement			requirement	
Flow ends [STLI	Ε]			
16 bits	STLE		32 bits	-
Execution	-		Suitable Models	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition				
Hardware	-		Software	-
requirement			requirement	

2: Operands

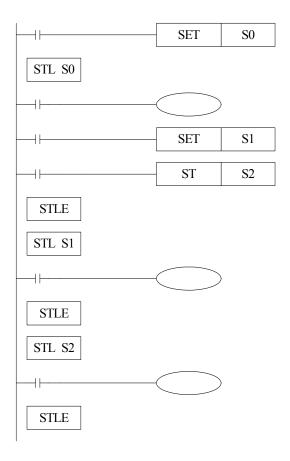
Operands	Function	Data Type
Sn	Jump to the target flow S	Flow ID

3: Suitable Soft Components

Bit	Operands				Syste	m		
	Operanus	X	Y	M	S	Т	C	Dn.m
	Sn				•			

Description

- STL and STLE should be used in pairs. STL represents the start of a flow, STLE represents the end of a flow.
- After executing of **SET Sxxx** instruction, the flow specified by these instructions is ON.
- After executing RST Sxxx instruction, the specified flow is OFF.
- In flow S0, SET S1 close the current flow S0, open flow S1.
- In flow S0, ST S2 open the flow S2, but don't close flow S0.
- When flow turns from ON to be OFF, reset OUT、PLS、PLF、not accumulate timer etc.
 which belongs to the flow.
- ST instruction is usually used when a program needs to run more flows at the same time.
- After executing of SET Sxxx instruction, the pulse instructions will be closed (including one-segment, multi-segment, relative or absolute, return to the origin)



PLC Software Manual Page 94 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

4-3-4 [FOR] and [NEXT]

1: Summary

Loop execute the program between FOR and NEXT with the specified times;

Loop starts [FOF	R]		
16 bits	FOR	32 bits	-
Execution	Rising/Falling edge	Suitable Models	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition			
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	
Loop ends [NEX	т]		
16 bits	NEXTs	32 bits	-
Execution	Normally ON/OFF,	Suitable Models	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition	Rising/Falling edge		
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

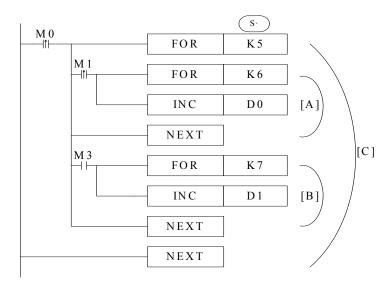
Operands	Function	Data Type
S	Program's loop times between FOR~NEXT	16 bits, BIN

3: Suitable Soft Components

Word	Operands System							Constant	Mod	lule			
word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S	•									•		

Description

- FOR.NEXT instructions must be programmed as a pair. Nesting is allowed, and the nesting level is 8.
- Between FOR/NEXT, LDP.LDF instructions are effective for one time. Every time when M0 turns from OFF to ON, and M1 turns from OFF to ON, [A] loop is executed 6 times.
- Every time if M0 turns from OFF to ON and M3 is ON, [B] loop is executed 5×7=35 times.
- If there are many loop times, the scan cycle will be prolonged. Monitor timer error may occur, please note this.
- If NEXT is before FOR, or no NEXT, or NEXT is behind FENG, END, or FOR and NEXT number is not equal, an error will occur.
- Between FOR~NEXT, CJ nesting is not allowed, also in one STL, FOR~NEXT must be programmed as a pair.



PLC Software Manual Page 96 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

4-3-5 [FEND] and [END]

1: Summary

FEND means the main program ends, while END means program ends;

main program ends [FE	ND]					
Execution condition	-	Suitable Models	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM			
Hardware	-	Software	-			
requirement		requirement				
program ends [END]	program ends [END]					
Execution condition	-	Suitable Models	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM			
Hardware	-	Software	-			
requirement		requirement				

2: Operands

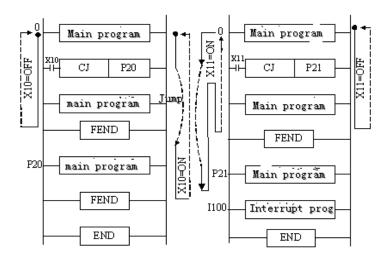
Operands	Function	Data Type
None	-	-

3: Suitable Soft Components

None

Description

Even though [FEND] instruction represents the end of the main program, if execute this instruction, the function is same with END. Execute the output/input disposal, monitor the refresh of the timer, return to the 0th step.



- If program the tag of CALL instruction behind FEND instruction, there must be SRET instruction. If the interrupt pointer program behind FEND instruction, there must be IRET instruction.
- After executing CALL instruction and before executing SRET instruction, if execute FEND instruction; or execute FEND instruction after executing FOR instruction and before executing NEXT, then an error will occur.
- In the condition of using many FEND instruction, please compile routine or subroutine between the last FEND instruction and END instruction.



4-4 Data Compare Function

Mnemonic	Function	Chapter
LD =	LD activates when (S1) = (S2)	4-4-1
LD>	LD activates when (S1) > (S2)	4-4-1
LD <	LD activates when (S1) < (S2)	4-4-1
LD < >	LD activates when (S1)≠ (S2)	4-4-1
LD < =	LD activates when (S1)≤ (S2)	4-4-1
LD > =	LD activates when (S1)≥ (S2)	4-4-1
AND =	AND activates when (S1) = (S2)	4-4-2
AND >	AND activates when (S1) > (S2)	4-4-2
AND <	AND activates when (S1) < (S2)	4-4-2
AND < >	AND activates when (S1)≠ (S2)	4-4-2
AND < =	AND activates when (S1)≤ (S2)	4-4-2
AND > =	AND activates when (S1)≥ (S2)	4-4-2
OR =	OR activates when (S1) = (S2)	4-4-3
OR >	OR activates when (S1) > (S2)	4-4-3
OR <	OR activates when (S1) < (S2)	4-4-3
OR < >	OR activates when (S1)≠ (S2)	4-4-3
OR < =	OR activates when (S1)≤ (S2)	4-4-3
OR > =	OR activates when (S1)≥ (S2)	4-4-3

4-4-1 LD Compare [LD]

1: Summary

LD is the point compare instruction connected with the generatrix.

LD Compare [LD]						
16 bits	As below	32 bits	As below			
Execution	-	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM			
condition		Models				
Hardware	-	Software	-			
requirement		requirement				

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
S1	Specify the Data (to be compared) or soft component's address code	16/32bits, BIN
S2	Specify the comparand's value or soft component's address code	16/32 bits, BIN

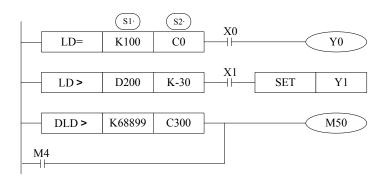
3: Suitable soft components

Word	Operands System						Constant	Mod	lule				
Word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
	S2	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		

Description

16 bits instruction	32 bits instruction	Activate Condition	Not Activate Condition
LD =	DLD =	(S1)=(S2)	(S1)≠ (S2)
LD>	DLD >	(S1)> (S2)	(S1)≤ (S2)
LD <	DLD <	(S1)< (S2)	(S1)≥ (S2)
LD < >	DLD < >	(S1)≠ (S2)	(S1) = (S2)
LD < =	DLD < =	(S1)≤ (S2)	(S1)> (S2)
LD > =	DLD > =	(S1)≥ (S2)	(S1) < (S2)

PLC Software Manual Page 99 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



Notes

- When the source data's highest bit (16 bits: b15, 32 bits: b31) is 1, use the data as a negative.
- The comparison of 32 bits counter (C300~) must be 32 bits instruction. If assigned as a 16 bits instruction, it will lead the program error or operation error.

4-4-2 . AND Compare [AND]

1: Summary

AND: The compare instruction to serial connect with the other contactors.

AND Compare [AND]						
16 bits	As Below	32 bits	As Below			
Execution	Normally ON/OFF coil	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM			
condition		Models				
Hardware	-	Software	-			
requirement		requirement				

2: Operands

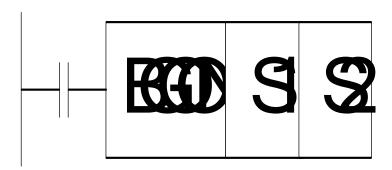
Operands	Function	Data Type
S1	Specify the Data (to be compared) or soft component's address code	16/32bit,BIN
S2	Specify the comparand's value or soft component's address code	16/32bit,BIN

3: Suitable soft components

Word	Word Operands System I							Konstant	Mod	lule			
woru		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
	S2	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		

Description

16 bits instruction	32 bits instruction	Activate Condition	Not Activate Condition
AND =	DAND =	(S1)=(S2)	(S1)≠ (S2)
AND >	DAND >	(S1)> (S2)	(S1)≤ (S2)
AND <	DAND <	(S1)< (S2)	(S1)≥ (S2)
AND < >	DAND < >	(S1)≠ (S2)	(S1) = (S2)
AND < =	DAND < =	(S1)≤ (S2)	(S1)> (S2)
AND > =	DAND > =	(S1)≥ (S2)	(S1) < (S2)



Notes

- When the source data's highest bit (16 bits: b15, 32 bits: b31) is 1, use the data as a negative.
- The comparison of 32 bits counter (C300~) must be 32 bits instruction. If assigned as a 16 bits instruction, it will lead the program error or operation error.

4-4-3 . Parallel Compare [OR]

1: Summary

OR The compare instruction to parallel connect with the other contactors

Parallel Comp	Parallel Compare [OR]						
16 bits	As below	32 bits	As below				
Execution	-	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM				
condition		Models					
Hardware	-	Software	-				
requirement		requirement					

2: Operands

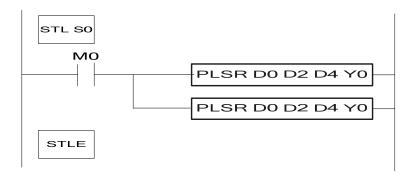
Operands	Function	Data Type
S1	Specify the Data (to be compared) or soft component's address code	16/32 bit,BIN
S2	Specify the comparand's value or soft component's address code	16/32 bit,BIN

3: Suitable soft components

Word	Operands				System						Constant	Module	
word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
	S2	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		

Description

16 bits instruction	32 bits instruction	Activate Condition	Not Activate Condition
OR =	DOR =	(S1)=(S2)	(S1)≠ (S2)
OR >	DOR >	(S1)> (S2)	(S1)≤ (S2)
OR <	DOR <	(S1)< (S2)	(S1)≥ (S2)
OR < >	DOR < >	(S1)≠ (S2)	(S1)= (S2)
OR < =	DOR < =	(S1)≤ (S2)	(S1)> (S2)
OR > =	DOR > =	(S1)≥ (S2)	(S1)<(S2)



Notes

- When the source data's highest bit (16 bits: b15, 32 bits: b31) is 1, use the data as a negative.
- The comparison of 32 bits counter (C300~) must be 32 bits instruction. If assigned as a 16 bits instruction, it will lead the program error or operation error.

PLC Software Manual Page 103 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



4-5 Data Move

Mnemonic	Function	Chapter
CMP	Data compare	4-5-1
ZCP	Data zone compare	4-5-2
MOV	Move	4-5-3
BMOV	Data block move	4-5-4
PMOV	Data block move (with faster speed)	4-5-5
FMOV	Fill move	4-5-6
FWRT	FlashROM written	4-5-7
MSET	Zone set	4-5-8
ZRST	Zone reset	4-5-9
SWAP	The high and low byte of the destinated devices are exchanged	4-5-10
XCH	Exchange	4-5-11

PLC Software Manual Page 104 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

4-5-1 Data Compare [CMP]

1. Summary

Compare the two specified Data, output the result.

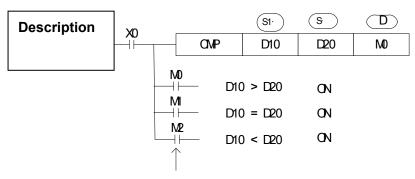
Data compare	Data compare [CMP]							
16 bits	CMP	32 bits	DCMP					
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM					
condition	edge	Models						
Hardware	-	Software	-					
requirement		requirement						

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
S1	Specify the data (to be compared) or soft component's	16 bit,BIN
	address code	
S	Specify the comparand's value or soft component's	16 bit,BIN
	address code	
D	Specify the compare result's address code	bit

3: Suitable soft component

Word	Operands		Operands System								Constant	Mod	lule	
,,,,,,,			D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1		•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
	S		•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
Bit	Oper					Syster	n							
	ands	X	Y		M	S	T	С	Dnm					
	D		•		•	•								



Even X000=OFF to stop ZCP instruction, M0~M2 will keep the original status

- \bullet Compare data $\begin{tabular}{ll} S1 \end{tabular}$ and $\begin{tabular}{ll} S\cdot \end{tabular}$, output the three points' ON/OFF status (start with $\begin{tabular}{ll} D\cdot \end{tabular}$
- \bullet $\stackrel{\frown}{D}$, $\stackrel{\frown}{D}$ + 1 , $\stackrel{\frown}{D}$ + 2 : the three point's on/off output according to the valve

PLC Software Manual Page 105 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

4-5-2 Data zone compare [ZCP]

1: Summary

Compare the two specify Data with the current data, output the result.

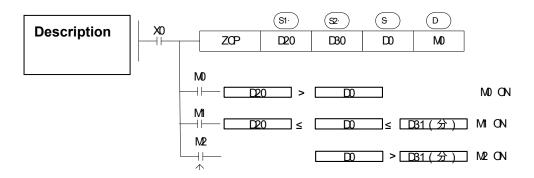
Data Zone cor	Data Zone compare [ZCP]							
16 bits	ZCP	32 bits	DZCP					
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM					
condition	edge	Models						
Hardware	-	Software	-					
requirement		requirement						

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
S1	Specify the down-limit Data (of the compare stand) or	16 bit, BIN
	soft component's address code	
S2	Specify the Up-limit Data (of the compare stand) or	16 bit, BIN
	soft component's address code	
S	Specify the current data or soft component's address	16 bit, BIN
	code	
D	Specify the compare result's data or soft component's	bit
	address code	

3: Suitable soft components

Word Bit	Operands		System									Constant	Module	
			D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1		•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
	S2		•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
	S	•		•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
	Oper		System											
	ands	X	Y	7	M	S	T	С	Dnm					
	D		•	,	•	•								



Even X000=OFF stop ZCP instruction , M0~M2 will keep the original status

PLC Software Manual Page 106 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

- $\bullet \quad \text{Compare} \quad \underbrace{S \cdot} \quad \text{data with} \quad \underbrace{S1} \quad \text{and} \quad \underbrace{S2} \quad , \quad \underbrace{D \cdot} \quad \text{output the three point's ON/OFF status according to the zone size}.$

4-5-3 MOV [MOV]

1: Summary

Move the specified data to the other soft components

MOV [MOV]			
16 bits	MOV	32 bits	DMOV
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition	edge	Models	
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

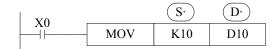
2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
S	Specify the source data or register's address code	16 bit/32 bit, BIN
D	Specify the target soft component's address code	16 bit/32 bit, BIN

3: Suitable soft component

Word	Operands	s System									Constant	Module	
		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
	D	•		•	•	•		•	•	•			

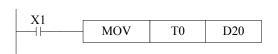
Description



- Move the source data to the target
- When X000 is off, the data keeps same
- Convert constant K10 to be BIN code automatically

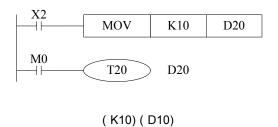
<read the counter's or time's current value> <indirectly specify the counter's ,time's set value>

PLC Software Manual Page 107 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

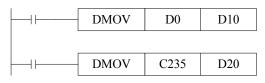


(The current value of T0) \rightarrow (D20)

The same as counter



< Move the 32bits data >



(D1 , D0)→(D11 , D10)

Please use DMOV when the value is 32 bits, such as MUL instruction, high speed counter...

4-5-4 . Data Block Move [BMOV]

1: Summary

Move the specified data block to

Data block move [BMOV]							
16 bits	BMOV	32 bits	-				
Execution	Normally ON/OFF coil	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM				
condition		Models					
Hardware	-	Software	-				
requirement		requirement					

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
S	Specify the source data block or soft component	16 bits, BIN; bit
	address code	
D	Specify the target soft components address code	16 bits, BIN; bit
n	Specify the move data's number	16 bits, BIN;

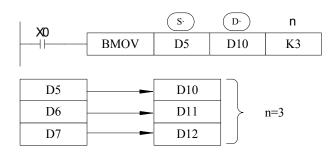
3: Suitable soft components

											_		
Word	Operands		System								Constant	Mod	lule
,, ora		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•			
	D	•		•	•	•		•	•	•			
	n	•			•	•	•		•	•	•		

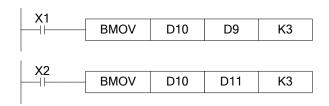
Bit

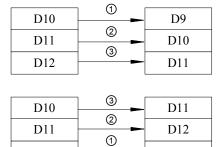
Operands	System							
	X	Y	M	S	T	C	Dnm	
S	•	•	•					
D	•	•	•					

(1) Move the specified "n" data to the specified "n" soft components in the form block.



(2) As the following picture, when the data address overlapped, the instruction will do from 1 to 3.





D13

D12

Data Block Move [PMOV] 4-5-5

1: Summary

Move the specified data block to the other soft components

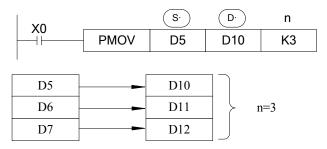
Data block mov[PMOV]							
16 bits	PMOV	32 bits	-				
Execution	Normally ON/OFF coil	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM				
condition		Models					
Hardware	-	Software	-				
requirement		requirement					

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
S	Specify the source data block or soft component address code	16 bits, BIN; bit
D	Specify the target soft components address code	16 bits, BIN; bit
n	Specify the move data's number	16 bits, BIN;

Vord	Operan	ds	System									Constant	Mod	lule
Word			D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•			
Bit	D		•		•	•	•		•	•	•			
	n		•			•	•		•	•	•	•		
	Oper					system	1							
	ands	X	Y	7	M	S	T	С	Dn.m					
	S	•	•	,	•									
	D	•	•	,	•									

(3) Move the specified "n" data to the specified "n" soft components in form of block



- The function of PMOV and BMOV is mostly the same, but the PMOV has the faster speed
- PMOV finish in one scan cycle, when executing PMOV, close all the interruptions
- Mistake many happen, if there is a repeat with source address and target address

4-5-6 Fill Move [FMOV]

1: Summary

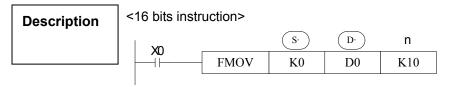
Move the specified data block to the other soft components

Fill Move [FM0	DV]		
16 bits	FMOV	32 bits	DFMOV
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition	edge	Models	
Hardware	DFMOV need above V3.0	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

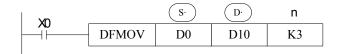
Operands	Function	Data Type
S	Specify the source data block or soft component address code	16 bits, BIN; bit
D	Specify the target soft components address code	16 bits, BIN; bit
n	Specify the move data's number	16 bits, BIN;

Word	Operands		System							Constant	Mod	lule	
		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
	D	•		•	•	•		•	•	•			
	n	•			•	•		•	•	•	•		

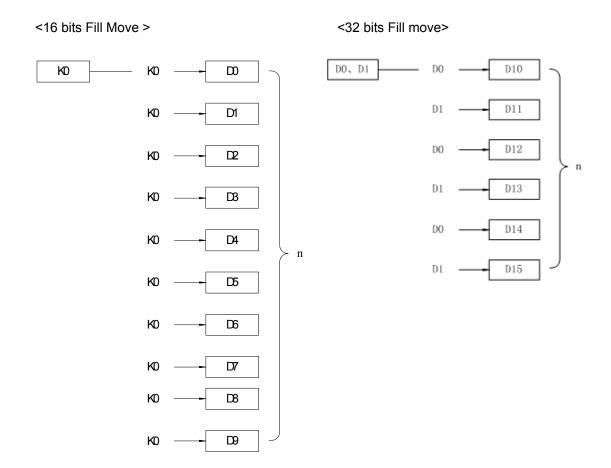


- (4) Move K0 to D0~D9, copy a single data device to a range of destination device.
- (5) The data stored in the source device (S) is copied to every device within the destination range, The range is specified by a device head address (D) and a quantity of consecutive elements (n).
- (6) If the specified number of destination devices (n) exceeds the available space at the destination location, then only the available destination devices will be written to.

<32 bits instruction >



Move D0.D1 to D10.D11:D12.D13:D14.D15.



4-5-7 FlashROM Write [FWRT]

1: Summary

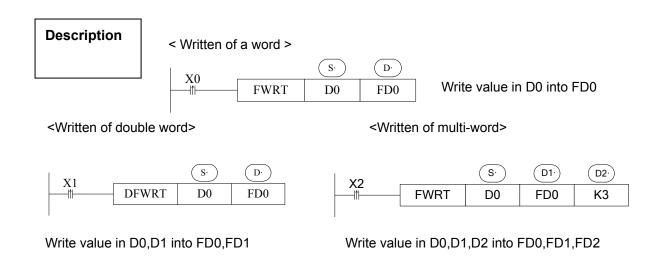
Write the specified data to other soft components

FlashROM Wr	FlashROM Write [FWRT]							
16 bits	FWRT	32 bits	DFWRT					
Execution	rising/falling edge	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM					
condition		Models						
Hardware	-	Software	-					
requirement		requirement						

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
S	The data write in the source or save in the soft element	16 bits/32 bits, BIN
D	Write in target soft element	16 bits/32 bits, BIN
D1	Write in target soft element start address	16 bits/32 bits, BIN
D2	Write in data quantity	bit

W 1	Operands				Constant	Module							
Word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
	D		•										
	D1		•										
	D2	•			•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
											_		



- ※1: FWRT instruction only allow to write data into FlashRom register. In this storage, even battery drop, data could be used to store important technical parameters
- \times 2 : Written of FWRT needs a long time, about 150ms, so frequently operate this operate operation is recommended
- 3: The written time of Flshrom is about 1,000,000 times. So we suggest using edge signal (LDP, LDF etc.) to trigger.
- ※4: Frequently written of FlashROM

4-5-8 Zone set [MSET]

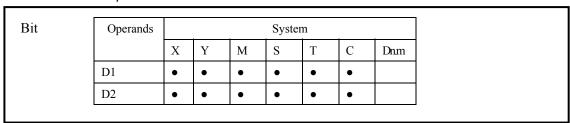
1: Summary

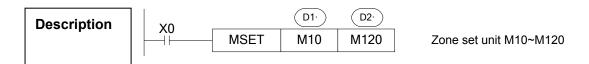
Set or reset the soft element in certain range

Multi-set [MSE	:T]		
16 bits	MSET.ZRST	32 bits	-
Execution	Normally ON/OFF	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition		Models	
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
D1	Start soft element address	bit
D2	End soft element address	bit





- lacktriangledown D1 D2 Are specified as the same type of soft units, and D1 < D2
- When (D1) > (D2), will not run Zone set, set M8004.M8067, and D8067=2.

4-5-9 Zone reset [ZRST]

1: Summary

Reset the soft element in the certain range

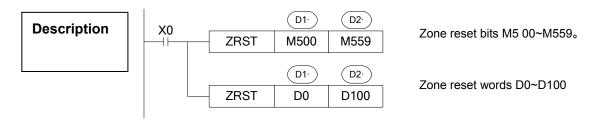
	U		
Multi-reset [ZF	RST]		
16 bits	ZRST	32 bits	-
Execution	Normally ON/OFF	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition		Models	
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
D1	Start address of soft element	Bit:16 bits,BIN
D2	End address of soft element	Bit:16 bits,BIN

3: Suitable soft components

Word	Operands					System	n				Constant	Mod	lule
		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	D1	•					•	•	•				
	D2	•				•	•	•	•				
									•	·	•		
Bit	Operands					Syste	m						
Bit	Operands		X	Y	M	Syste	m T	С	Dnr	n			
Bit	Operands D1		X	Y	M •	1	1	C •	Dnr	n			



- $\overline{D1}$ $\overline{D2}$ Are specified as the same type of soft units, and $\overline{D1}$ < $\overline{D2}$
- When $\boxed{D1}$ > $\boxed{D2}$ only reset the soft unit specified in $\boxed{D1}$, and set M8004.M8067 , D8067=2.

Other Reset Instruction

- As soft unit's separate reset instruction, RST instruction can be used to bit unit Y, M, S and word unit T, C, D
- 2. As fill move for constant K0, 0 can be written into DX, DY, DM, DS, T, C, D.

4-5-10 Swap the high and low byte [SWAP]

1: Summary

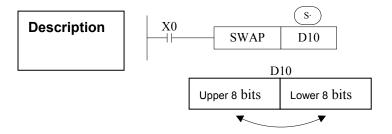
Swap the high and low byte

High and low b	oyte swap [SWAP]		
16 bits	SWAP	32 bits	-
Execution	Normally ON/OFF	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition		Models	
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
S	The address of the soft element	16 bits: BIN

Word	Operands		System							Constant	Module		
word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S	•			•	•							



- Low 8 bits and high 8 bits change when it is 16 bits instruction.
- If the instruction is a consecutive executing instruction, each operation cycle should change.

4-5-11 Exchange [XCH]

1: Summary

Exchange the data in two soft element

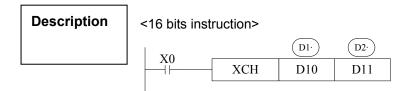
Exchange [XC	H]		
16 bits	XCH	32 bits	DXCH
Execution	Normally ON/OFF	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition		Models	
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
D1	The soft element address	16 bits, BIN
D2	The soft element address	16 bits, BIN

3: Suitable soft component

	Operands					Syster	n				Constant	Mod	hile
Word	Operands	D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	К/Н	ID	QD
	D1	•			•	•		•	•	•			
	D2	•			•	•		•	•	•			



Before (D10) =100
$$\rightarrow$$
After (D10) =101

- The contents of the two destination devices D1 and D2 are swapped,
- When drive input X0 is ON, each scan cycle should carry on data exchange, please note.

<32 bits instruction >



 32 bits instruction [DXCH] swaps value composed by D10, D11 and the value composed by D20, D21.

PLC Software Manual Page 119 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



4-6 Data Operation Instructions

Mnemonic	Function	Chapter			
ADD	Addition	4-6-1			
SUB	Subtraction	4-6-2			
MUL	Multiplication	4-6-3			
DIV	Division	4-6-4			
INC	Increment	4-6-5			
DEC	Decrement	4-6-5			
MEAN	Mean	4-6-6			
WAND	Logic Word And	4-6-7			
WOR	Logic Word Or	4-6-7			
WXOR	Logic Exclusive Or	4-6-7			
CML	Compliment	4-6-8			
NEG	Negation	4-6-9			

PLC Software Manual Page 120 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

4-6-1 Addition [ADD]

1: Summary

Add two numbers and store the result

Add [ADD]	Add [ADD]									
16 bits	ADD	32 bits	DADD							
Execution	Normally ON/OFF	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM							
condition		Models								
Hardware	-	Software	-							
requirement		requirement								

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
S1	The number address	16 bit/32 bit, BIN
S2	The number address	16 bit/32bit, BIN
D	The result address	16 bit/32bit, BIN

3: Suitable soft components

Word	Operands System									Constant	Mod	lule	
word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	К/Н	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
	S2	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
	D	•			•	•		•	•	•			



- The data contained within the two source devices are combined and the total is stored in the specified destination device. Each data's highest bit is the sign bit, 0 stands for positive, 1 stands for negative. All calculations are algebraic processed. (5+ (-8) =-3)
- 4. If the result of a calculation is "0", the "0" flag acts. If the result exceeds 323 , 767 (16 bits limit) or 2,147,483,647 (32 bits limit) , the carry flag acts. (refer to the next page) . If the result exceeds –323,768 (16 bits limit) or –2,147,483,648 (32 bits limit), the borrow flag acts (Refer to the next page。
- 5. When carry on 32 bits operation, word device's low 16 bits are assigned, the device following closely the preceding device's ID will be the high bits. To avoid ID repetition, we recommend you assign device's ID to be even ID.
- 6. The same device may be used as a source and a destination. If this is the case then the result changes after every scan cycle. Please note this point.

PLC Software Manual Page 121 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

Related Flag

Flag meaning:

Flag	Name	Function
M8020	Zero	ON : the calculate result is zero
		OFF : the calculate result is not zero
M8021	Borrow	ON: the calculate result is less than -32768(16 bit) or -2147483648(32bit)
IVIOUZ I	BOITOW	OFF: the calculate result is over -32768(16 bit) or -2147483648(32bit)
Magaza	Commi	ON: the calculate result is over 32768(16 bit) or 2147483648(32bit)
M8022	Carry	OFF: the calculate result is less than 32768(16 bit) or 2147483648(32bit)

4-6-2 Subtraction [SUB]

1: Summary

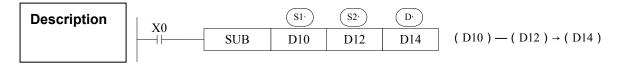
Sub two numbers, store the result

Subtraction [S	Subtraction [SUB]									
16 bits	SUB	32 bits	DSUB							
Execution	Normally ON/OFF	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM							
condition		Models								
Hardware	-	Software	-							
requirement		requirement								

2: Operands

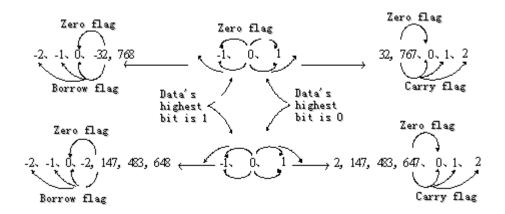
Operands	Function	Data Type
S1	The number address	16 bits /32 bits,BIN
S2	The number address	16 bits /32 bits,BIN
D	The result address	16 bits /32 bits,BIN

Word	Operands		System									Mod	lule
word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
	S2	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
	D	•			•	•		•	•	•			



- 7. \bigcirc SI·) appoint the soft unit's content, subtract the soft unit's content appointed by \bigcirc S2·) in the format of algebra. The result will be stored in the soft unit appointed by \bigcirc D·). (5-(-8)=13)
- 8. The action of each flag, the appointment method of 32 bits operation's soft units are both the same with the preceding ADD instruction.
- 9. The importance is: in the preceding program, if X0 is ON, SUB operation will be executed every scan cycle

The relationship of the flag's action and vale's positive/negative is shown below:



4-6-3 Multiplication [MUL]

1: Summary

Multiply two numbers, store the result

Multiplication [Multiplication [MUL]										
16 bits	MUL	32 bits	DMUL								
Execution	Normally ON/OFF	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM								
condition		Models									
Hardware	-	Software	-								
requirement		requirement									

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
S1	The number address	16 bits/32bits,BIN
S2	The number address	16 bits/32bits,BIN
D	The result address	16 bits/32bits,BIN

Word	Operands System									Constant	Mod	lule	
word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
	S2	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
	D	•			•	•		•	•	•			

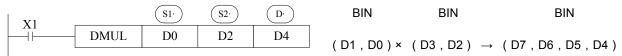


<16 bits Operation>



- 10. The contents of the two source devices are multiplied together and the result is stored at the destination device in the format of 32 bits. As in the upward chart: when (D0)=8,(D2)=9, (D5, D4) =72.
- 11. The result's highest bit is the symbol bit: positive (0), negative (1).
- 12. When be bit unit, it can carry on the bit appointment of K1~K8. When appoint K4, only the result's low 16 bits can be obtained.

<32 bits Operation >



- 13. When use 2 bits Operation, the result is stored at the destination device in the format of 64 bits.
- 14. Even when utilizing word device, 64 bits results can't be monitored at once.

LMAN021_R2V2

4-6-4 Division [DIV]

1: Summary

Divide two numbers and store the result

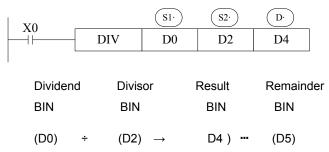
Division [DIV]	Division [DIV]										
16 bits	DIV	32 bits	DDIV								
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM								
condition	edge	Models									
Hardware	-	Software	-								
requirement		requirement									

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
S1	The number address	16 bits / 32 bits, BIN
S2	The number address	16 bits /32 bits, BIN
D	The result address	16 bits /32 bits, BIN

Word Operands System Con						Constant	Mod	lule					
word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
	S2	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
	D	•			•	•		•	•	•			

<16 bits Operation >



- 15. SI appoints the device's content be the dividend, S2 appoints the device's content be the divisor, D appoints the device and the next one to store the result and the remainder.
- 16. In the above example, if input X0 is ON, devision operation is executed every scan cycle.

<32 bits Operation >



Dividend	Divisor	Result	Remainder
BIN	BIN	BIN	BIN
(D1,D0)	÷ (D3,D2)	(D5,D4) ···	(D7,D6)

- 17. The dividend is composed by the device appointed by and the next one. The divisor is composed by the device appointed by and the next one. The result and the remainder are stored in the four sequential devices, the first one is appointed by
- 18. If the value of the divisor is 0, then an operation error is executed and the operation of the DIV instruction is cancelled
- 19. The highest bit of the result and remainder is the symbol bit (positive:0, negative: 1). When any of the dividend or the divisor is negative, then the result will be negative. When the dividend is negative, then the remainder will be negative.

4-6-5 Increment [INC] & Decrement [DEC]

1: Summary

Increase or decrease the number

Increment 1[IN	IC]		
16 bits	INC	32 bits	DINC
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition	edge	Models	
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	
Increment 1[D	EC]		
16 bits	DEC	32 bits	DDEC
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition	edge	Models	
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

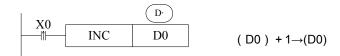
Operands	Function	Data Type
D	The number address	16 bits / 32bits,BIN

3: Suitable soft components

Word	Operands					System	n				Constant	Mod	lule
		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	D	•			•	•		•	•	•			
'			•	•		•		•	•				

PLC Software Manual Page 129 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

< Increment [INC]>



- 20. On every execution of the instruction the device specified as the destination (D·) has its current value incremented (increased) by a value of 1.
- 21. In 16 bits operation, when +32,767 is reached, the next increment will write -32,767 to the destination device. In this case, there's no additional flag to identify this change in the counted value.

<Decrement [DEC]>

$$\begin{array}{c|c} X1 & \hline \\ \hline \\ \hline \\ \hline \\ \hline \end{array} \begin{array}{c|c} D \\ \hline \\ \hline \end{array} \begin{array}{c} D \\ \hline \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} D \\ \hline \end{array} \begin{array}{c} D \\ \hline \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} D \\ \hline \end{array} \begin{array}{c} D \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} D \\$$

- 23. On every execution of the instruction the device specified as the destination D has its current value decremented (decreased) by a value of 1.
- 24. When -32 , 768 or -2 , 147 , 483 , 648 is reached, the next decrement will write +32 , 767 or +2 , 147 , 483 , 647 to the destination device.

4-6-6 Mean [MEAN]

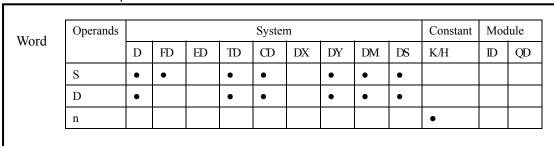
1: Summary

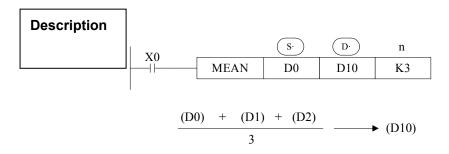
Get the mean value of numbers

Mean [MEAN]			
16 bits	MEAN	32 bits	DMEAN
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition	edge	Models	
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
S	The head address of the numbers	16 bits, BIN
D	The mean result address	16 bits, BIN
n	The number quantity	16 bits, BIN





- 25. The value of all the devices within the source range is summed and then divided by the number of devices summed, i.e. n.. This generates an integer mean value which is stored in the destination device (D) The remainder of the calculated mean is ignored.
- 26. If the value of n is specified outside the stated range (1 to 64) an error is generated.

4-6-7 Logic AND [WAND], Logic OR[WOR], Logic Exclusive OR [WXOR]

1: Summary

Do logic AND, OR, XOR for numbers

Logic AND [W/	AND]		
16 bits	WAND	32 bits	DWAND
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition	edge	Models	
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	
Logic OR[WOI	٦]		
16 bits	WOR	32 bits	DWOR
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition	edge	Models	
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	
Logic Exclusiv	e OR [WXOR]		
16 bits	WXOR	32 bits	DWXOR
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition	edge	Models	
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

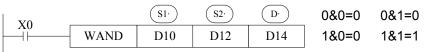
Operands	Function	Data Type
S1	The soft element address	16bit/32bit,BIN
S2	The soft element address	16bit/32bit,BIN
D	The result address	16bit/32bit,BIN

3: Suitable soft components

Word Operands System C							Constant	Mod	lule				
word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•			
	S2	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•			
	D	•			•	•		•	•	•			

PLC Software Manual Page 132 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

< Execute logic AND operation with each bit>



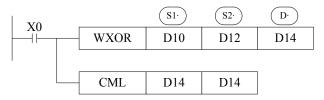
< Execute logic OR operation with each bit >



< Execute logic Exclusive OR operation with each bit >



If use this instruction along with CML instruction, XOR NOT operation could also be executed.



PLC Software Manual Page 133 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

4-6-8 Converse [CML]

1: Summary

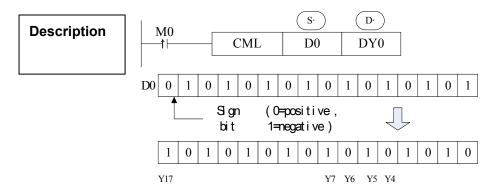
Converse the phase of the numbers

Converse [CM	L]		
16 bits	CML	32 bits	DCML
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition	edge	Models	
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

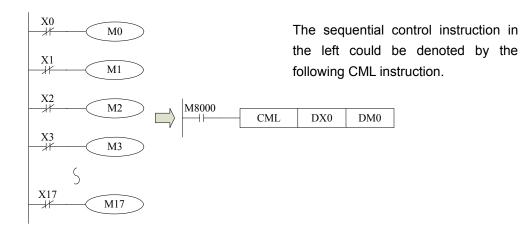
Operands	Function	Data Type
S	Source number address	16 bits/32 bits, BIN
D	Result address	16 bits/32 bits, BIN

Word Operands System Consta								Constant	Module				
word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
	D	•			•	•		•	•	•			



- 27. Each data bit in the source device is inverted $(1\rightarrow 0, 0\rightarrow 1)$ and sent to the destination device. If use constant K in the source device, it can be auto convert to be binary.
- 28. It's available when you want to inverted output the PLC's output

< Reading of inverted input >



PLC Software Manual Page 135 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

4-6-9 Negative [NEG]

1: Summary

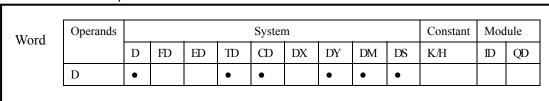
Get the negative number

Negative [NEG]										
16 bits	NEG	32 bits	DNEG							
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC1.XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM							
condition	edge	Models								
Hardware	-	Software	-							
requirement		requirement								

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
D	The source number address	16 bits/ bits, BIN

3: Suitable soft components





29. The bit format of the selected device is inverted, I.e. any occurrence of a "1" becomes a "0" and any occurrence of "0" becomes "1", when this is complete, a further binary 1 is added to the bit format. The result is the total logic sigh change of the selected devices contents.

PLC Software Manual Page 136 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

4-7 Shift Instructions

Mnemonic	Function	Chapter
SHL	Arithmetic shift left	4-7-1
SHR	Arithmetic shift right	4-7-1
LSL	Logic shift left	4-7-2
LSR	Logic shift right	4-7-2
ROL	Rotation left	4-7-3
ROR	Rotation right	4-7-3
SFTL	Bit shift left	4-7-4
SFTR	Bit shift right	4-7-5
WSFL	Word shift left	4-7-6
WSFR	Word shift right	4-7-7

PLC Software Manual Page 137 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

4-7-1 Arithmetic shift left [SHL], Arithmetic shift right [SHR]

1: Summary

Do arithmetic shift left/right for the numbers

Arithmetic shif	Arithmetic shift left [SHL]									
16 bits	SHL	32 bits	DSHL							
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM							
condition	edge	Models								
Hardware	-	Software	-							
requirement		requirement								
Arithmetic shif	t right [SHR]									
16 bits	SHR	32 bits	DSHR							
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM							
condition	edge	Models								
Hardware	-	Software	-							
requirement		requirement								

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
D	The source data address	16bit/32bit,BIN
n	Shift left or right times	16bit/32bit,BIN

3: Suitable soft components

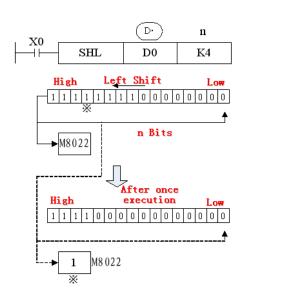
Word	Word Operands System								Constant	Mod	lule		
Word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	D	•			•	•		•	•	•			
	n										•		

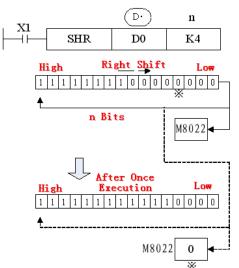
PLC Software Manual Page 138 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

- After once execution, the low bit is filled in 0, the final bit is stored in carry flag.
- After once execution, the high bit is same with the bit before shifting, the final bit is stored in carry flag.

< Arithmetic shift left >

< Arithmetic shift right >





4-7-2 Logic shift left [LSL], Logic shift right [LSR]

1: Summary

Do logic shift right/left for the numbers

Logic shift left	Logic shift left [LSL]										
16 bits	LSL	32 bits	DLSL								
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM								
condition	edge	Models									
Hardware	-	Software	-								
requirement		requirement									
Logic shift righ	t [LSR]										
16 bits	LSR	32 bits	DLSR								
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM								
condition	edge	Models									
Hardware	-	Software	-								
requirement		requirement									

2. Operands

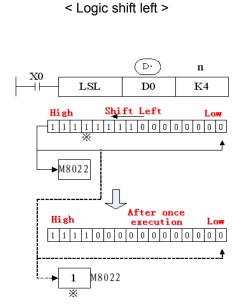
Operands	Function	Data Type
D	Source data address	16 bits/32 bits, BIN
n	Arithmetic shift left/right times	16 bits/32bits, BIN

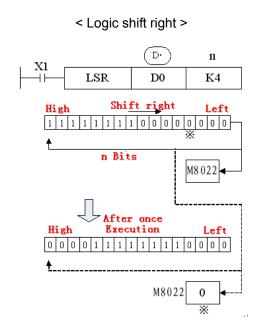
3. Suitable soft components

Word Operands System Constant								Mod	Module				
word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	D	•			•	•		•	•	•			
	n										•		

PLC Software Manual Page 140 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

- After once execution, the low bit is filled in 0, the final bit is stored in carry flag.
- LSL meaning and operation are the same as SHL.
- After once execution, the high bit is same with the bit before shifting, the final bit is stored in carry flag.
- LSR and SHR is different, LSR add 0 in high bit when moving, SHR all bits are moved.





4-7-3 . Rotation shift left [ROL] , Rotation shift right [ROR]

1: Summary

Continue and cycle shift left or right

Rotation shift left [ROL]										
16 bits	ROL	32 bits	DROL							
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM							
condition	edge	Models								
Hardware	-	Software	-							
requirement		requirement								
Rotation shift r	right [ROR]									
16 bits	ROR	32 bits	DROR							
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM							
condition	edge	Models								
Hardware	-	Software	-							
requirement		requirement								

2: Operands

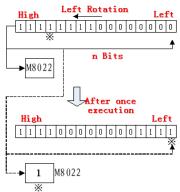
Operands	Function	Data Type
D	Source data address	16 bits/32 bits, BIN
n	Shift right or left times	16 bits/32 bits, BIN

Word	Operands	System									Constant	Module	
word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	D	•			•	•		•	•	•			
	n										•		

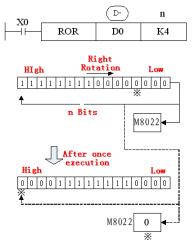
 The bit format of the destination device is rotated in bit places to the left on every operation of the instruction.

< Rotation shift left >





< Rotation shift right >



4-7-4 Bit shift left [SFTL]

1: Summary Bit shift left

Bit shift left [Si	-TL]		
16 bits	SFTL	32 bits	DSFTL
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition	edge	Models	
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

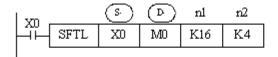
2: Operands

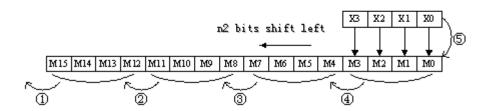
Operands	Function	Types
S	Source soft element head address	bit
D	Target soft element head address	bit
n1	Source data quantity	16 bits /32 bits, BIN
n2	Shift left times	16 bits/32 bits, BIN

Word	Operands		System									Module		
		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD	
	n1	•			•	•	•	•	•	•	•			
	n2	•			•	•	•	•	•	•	•			
Bit	Operands		System											
		Х	ζ .	Y	M	S	T	C	Dn.m					
	S	•	,	•	•	•	•	•						
	D			•	•	•	•	•						

Description

- (2) The instruction copies n2 source devices to a bit stack of length n1. For every new addition of n2 bits, the existing data within the bit stack is shifted n2 bits to the left/right. Any bit data moving to the position exceeding the n1 limit is diverted to an overflow area.
- (3) In every scan cycle, loop shift left action will be executed





- ① M15~M12→Overflow
- ② M11~M 8→M15~M 12
- ③ M 7~M 4→M11~M8
- ④ M 3~M 0→M7~M4
- © X 3~X 0→M3~M0

PLC Software Manual Page 145 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

4-7-5 Bit shift right [SFTR]

1: Summary

Bit shift right

Bit shift right [Bit shift right [SFTR]							
16 bits	SFTR	32 bits	DSFTR					
Execution	rising/falling edge	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM					
condition		Models						
Hardware	-	Software	-					
requirement		requirement						

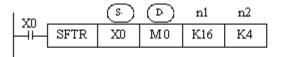
2: Operands

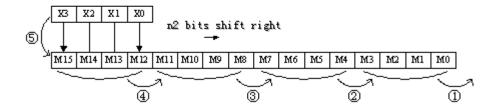
Operands	Function	Data Type
S	Source soft element head address	bit
D	Target soft element head address	bit
n1	Source data quantity	16 bits/32 bits, BIN
n2	Shift right times	16 bits/32 bits, BIN

Word	Operands		System							Constant	Mod	lule	
word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	n1	•			•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
	n2	•			•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
Bit	Operano	ds	X	Y	M	Syste	m T	С	Dn.ı	n			
	S								Dn.ı	n			
	D		•	•	•	•	•	•					

Description

- (4) The instruction copies n2 source devices to a bit stack of length n1. For every new addition of n2 bits, the existing data within the bit stack is shifted n2 bits to the left/right. Any bit data moving to the position exceeding the n1 limit is diverted to an overflow area.
- (5) In every scan cycle, loop shift right action will be executed





- M 3~M 0→Overflow
- ② M 7~M 4→M3~M0
- ③ M11~M 8→M7~M4
- ④ M15~M12→M11~M8
- ⑤ X 3~X 0→M15~M12

4-7-6 Word shift left [WSFL]

1: Summary

Word shift left

Word shift left	Word shift left [[WSFL]							
16 bits	WSFL	32 bits	-					
Execution	rising/falling edge	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM					
condition		Models						
Hardware	-	Software	-					
requirement		requirement						

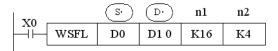
2: Operands

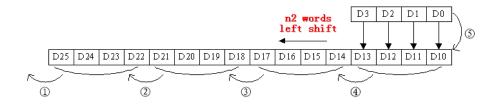
Operands	Function	Data Type
S	Source soft element head address	16 bits/32 bits, BIN
D	Target soft element head address	16 bits /32 bits, BIN
n1	Source data quantity	16 bits /32 bits, BIN
n2	Word shift left times	16 bits /32 bits, BIN

Word Operands System					tem				Constant	Module			
woru		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•			
	D	•			•	•		•	•	•			
	n1	•			•	•		•	•	•	•		
	n2	•			•	•		•	•	•	•		

Description

- The instruction copies n2 source devices to a word stack of length n1. For each addition of n2 words, the existing data within the word stack is shifted n2 words to the left. Any word data moving to a position exceeding the n1 limit is diverted to an overflow area.
- In every scan cycle, loop shift left action will be executed.





- ① D25~D22→Overflow
- ② D21~D18→D25~D22
- ③ D17~D14→D21~D18
- ④ D13~D10→D17~D14
- ⑤ D 3~D 0→D13~D10

4-7-7 Word shift right[WSFR]

1: Summary

Word shift right

Word shift righ	Word shift right [WSFR]							
16 bits	WSFR	32 bits	-					
Execution	rising/falling edge	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM					
condition		Models						
Hardware	-	Software	-					
requirement		requirement						

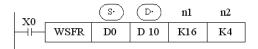
2: Operands

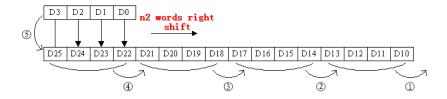
Operands	Function	Data Type
S	Source soft element head address	16 bits/32 bits, BIN
D	Target soft element head address	16 bits/32 bits, BIN
n1	Source data quantity	16 bits/32 bits, BIN
n2	Shift right times	16 bits/32 bits, BIN

Word	Operands		System							System					Constant	Mod	lule
woru		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD				
	S	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•							
	D	•			•	•		•	•	•							
	n1	•			•	•		•	•	•	•						
	n2	•			•	•		•	•	•	•						

Description

- The instruction copies n2 source devices to a word stack of length n1. For each addition of n2 words, the existing data within the word stack is shifted n2 words to the right. Any word data moving to a position exceeding the n1 limit is diverted to an overflow area.
- In every scan cycle, loop shift right action will be executed





- ① D13~D10→Overflow
- ② D17~D14→D13~D10
- ③ D21~D18→D17~D14
- ④ D25~D22→D21~D18
- ⑤ D 3~D 0→D25~D22

PLC Software Manual Page 151 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



4-8 Data Convert

Mnemonic	Function	Chapter
WTD	Single word integer converts to double word integer	4-8-1
FLT	16 bits integer converts to float point	4-8-2
DFLT	32 bits integer converts to float point	4-8-2
FLTD	64 bits integer converts to float point	4-8-2
INT	Float point converts to integer	4-8-3
BIN	BCD convert to binary	4-8-4
BCD	Binary converts to BCD	4-8-5
ASCI	Hex. converts to ASCII	4-8-6
HEX	ASCII converts to Hex.	4-8-7
DECO	Coding	4-8-8
ENCO	High bit coding	4-8-9
ENCOL	Low bit coding	4-8-10

PLC Software Manual Page 152 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

4-8-1 Single word integer converts to double word integer [WTD]

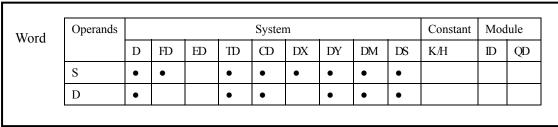
1: Summary

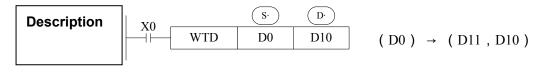
Single word in	Single word integer converts to double word integer [WTD]								
16 bits	WTD	32 bits	-						
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM						
condition	edge	Models							
Hardware	-	Software	-						
requirement		requirement							

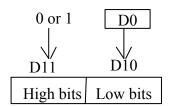
2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
S	Source soft element address	16 bits, BIN
D	Target soft element address	32 bits, BIN

3: Suitable soft components







- When single word D0 is positive integer, after executing this instruction, the high bit of double word D10 is 0.
- When single word D0 is negative integer, after executing this instruction, the high bit of double word D10 is 1.

PLC Software Manual Page 153 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

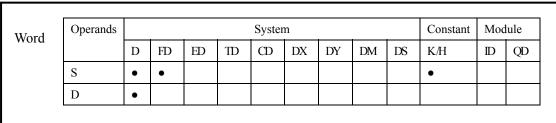
4-8-2 16 bits integer converts to float point [FLT]

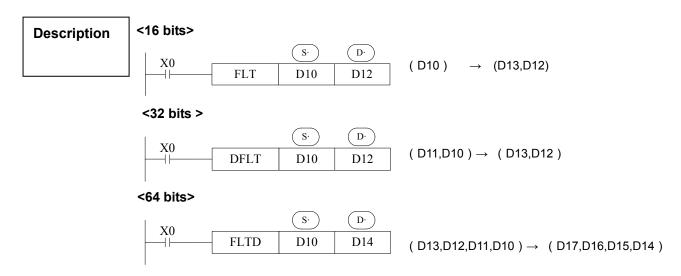
1: Summary

16 bits integer converts to float point [FLT]								
16 bits	FLT	32 bits	DFLT	64 bits	FLTD			
Execution	Normally ON/OF	F, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM				
condition	edge		Models					
Hardware	-		Software	-				
requirement			requirement					

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type			
S	Source soft element address	16 bits/32 bits/64 bits,BIN			
D	Target soft element address	32 bits/64 bits,BIN			





- Convert BIN integer to binary float point. As the constant K ,H will auto convert by the float operation instruction, so this FLT instruction can't be used.
- The instruction is contrary to INT instruction

4-8-3 Float point converts to integer [INT]

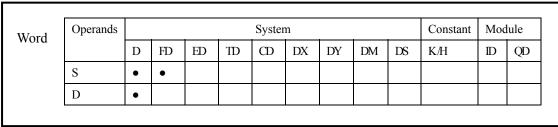
1: Summary

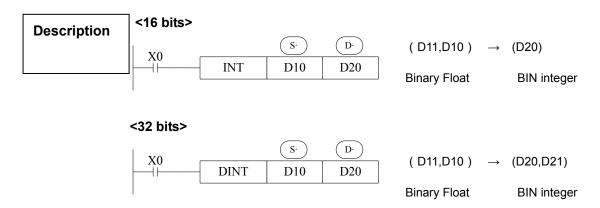
Float point converts to integer [INT]							
16 bits	INT	32 bits	DINT				
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM				
condition	edge	Models					
Hardware	-	Software	-				
requirement		requirement					

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
S	Source soft element address	16 bits/32 bits, BIN
D	Target soft element address	16 bits/32 bits, BIN

3: Suitable soft components





- The binary source number is converted into a BIN integer and stored at the destination device. Abandon the value behind the decimal point.
- This instruction is contrary to FLT instruction.
- When the result is 0, the flag bit is ON

When converting, less than 1 and abandon it, zero flag is ON.

The result is over below data, the carry flag is ON.

16 bits operation: -32,768~32,767

32 bits operation: -2,147,483,648~2,147,483,647

4-8-4 BCD convert to binary [BIN]

1: Summary

BCD convert to binary [BIN]						
16 bits	BIN	32 bits	-			
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM			
condition	edge	Models				
Hardware	-	Software	-			
requirement		requirement				

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type		
S	Source soft element address	BCD		
D	Target soft element address	16 bits/32 bits, BIN		

3: Suitable soft components

Word Operands System								System Constant M			Mod	Module	
Word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•			
	D	•			•	•		•	•	•			

Description

Convert and move instruction of Source (BCD) \rightarrow destination (BIN)



- When source data is not BCD code, M8067(Operation error), M8004 (error occurs)
- As constant K automatically converts to binary, so it's not suitable for this instruction.

4-8-5 Binary convert to BCD [BCD]

1: Summary

Binary convert to BCD [BCD]						
16 bits	BCD	32 bits	-			
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM			
condition	edge	Models				
Hardware	-	Software	-			
requirement		requirement				

2: Operands

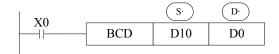
Operands	Function	Data Type			
S	Source soft element address	16 bits/32 bits, BIN			
D	Target soft element address	BCD code			

3: Suitable soft components

Word	Operands		System								Constant Modu		lule
Word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•			
	D	•			•	•		•	•	•			

Description

Convert and move instruction of source (BIN)→destination (BCD)



 This instruction can be used to output data directly to a seven-segment display.

4-8-6 Hex. converts to ASCII [ASCI]

1: Summary

Hex. convert to ASCII [ASCI]						
16 bits	ASCI	32 bits	-			
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM			
condition	edge	Models				
Hardware	-	Software	-			
requirement		requirement				

2: Operands

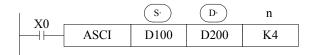
Operands	Function	Data Type
S	Source soft element address	2 bits, HEX
D	Target soft element address	ASCII code
n	Transform character quantity	16 bits, BIN

3: Suitable soft components

Word	Vord Operands System							Constant	Mod	dule			
D FD ED TD CD DX					DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD		
	S	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•			
	D	•			•	•		•	•	•			
	n	•			•	•		•	•	•	•		

PLC Software Manual Page 158 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

Description



Convert each bit of source's (S) Hex. format data to be ASCII code, move separately to the high 8 bits and low 8 bits of destination (D). The convert alphanumeric number is assigned with n.

 $\stackrel{\textstyle (D\cdot)}{}$ is low 8 bits, high 8 bits, store ASCII data.

The converted result is this

(D100)=0ABCH (D101)=1234H [0]=30H [1]=31H [5]=35H [A]=41H [2]=32H [6]=36H [B]=42H [3]=33H [7]=37H [C]=43H [4]=34H [8]=38H	Assign start device :							
[5]=35H [A]=41H [2]=32H [6]=36H [B]=42H [3]=33H [7]=37H [C]=43H	` '							
[-]	[5]=35H [2]=32H [B]=42H [7]=37H	[A]=41H [6]=36H [3]=33H [C]=43H						
	[.] •	[0] 00						

n D	K1	K2	K3	K4	K5	K6	K7	K8	K9
D200 down	[C]	[B]	[A]	[0]	[4]	[3]	[2]	[1]	[8]
D200 up		[C]	[B]	[A]	[0]	[4]	[3]	[2]	[1]
D201 down			[C]	[B]	[A]	[0]	[4]	[3]	[2]
D201 up				[C]	[B]	[A]	[0]	[4]	[3]
D202 down					[C]	[B]	[A]	[0]	[4]
D202 up						[C]	[B]	[A]	[0]
D203 down							[C]	[B]	[A]
D203 up								[C]	[B]
D204 down									[C]

PLC Software Manual Page 159 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

4-8-7 ASCII convert to Hex.[HEX]

1: Summary

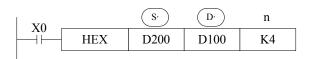
ASCII converts	ASCII converts to Hex. [HEX]								
16 bits	HEX	32 bits	-						
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM						
condition	edge	Models							
Hardware	-	Software	-						
requirement		requirement							

2: Operands

	Function	Date type
Operands		
S	Source soft element address	ASCII
D	Target soft element address	2 bits, HEX
n	Character quantity	16 bits, BIN

Word	Operands System						Constant	Mod	lule				
word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•			
	D	•			•	•		•	•	•			
	n										•		





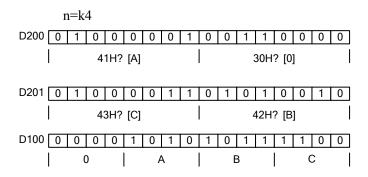
Convert the high and low 8 bits in source \bigcirc{S} to HEX data. Move 4 bits every time to destination \bigcirc{D} . The convert alphanumeric number is assigned by n.

The completed conversion of the above program is the following:

(S·)	ASCII	HEX
	Code	Convert
D200	30H	0
down		
D200 up	41H	Α
D201	42H	В
down		
D201 up	43H	С
D202	31H	1
down		
D202 up	32H	2

n (D·)	D102	D101	D100			
1			···0H			
2	Not ob	anga ta	··0AH			
3		Not change to				
4		be 0				
			Н			
5		0H	ABC1			
6		··0AH	BC12H			
7		·0ABH	C123H			

ПJ



4-8-8 Coding [DECO]

1: Summary

Transform the ASCII code to Hex numbers.

Coding [DECC	Coding [DECO]									
16 bits	DECO	S	-							
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM							
condition	edge	Models								
Hardware	-	Software	-							
requirement		requirement								

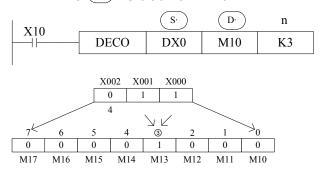
2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
S	Source soft element address	ASCII
D	Target soft element address	2 bits HEX
n	The coding soft element quantity	16bits, BIN

Word	Operands		System									Module	
Word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•			
	n										•		
Bit	Operands System												
		X	Y	N	1 5	S	Т	C	Dnm				
	D	•	•	•		•	•	•					

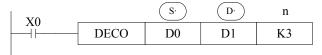
Description

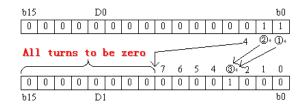
< When D is bit unit > n≤16



- The source address is 1+2=3, starts from M10, the number 3 bit (M13) is 1. If the source are all 0, M10 is 1.
- When n=0, no operation, beyond n=0~16, don't execute the instruction.
- When n=16, if coding command D is soft unit, it's point is 2^16=65536.
- When drive input is OFF, instructions are not executed, the activate coding output keep on activate.

< When D is word device > n≤4





- Low n bits(n≤4) of source address is decoded to target address. n≤3, the high bit of target address all become 0.
- When n=0, no operation, beyond n=0~14, don't execute the instruction.

PLC Software Manual Page 163 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

4-8-9 High bit coding [ENCO]

1: Summary

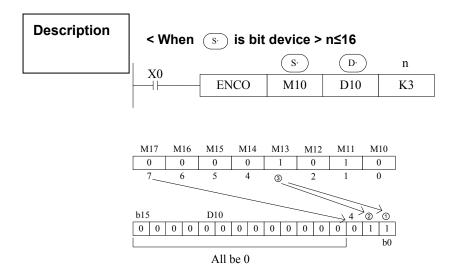
Transform the ASCII code to hex numbers

High bit coding	High bit coding [ENCO]									
16 bits	ENCO	32 bits	-							
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM							
condition	edge	Models								
Hardware	-	Software	-							
requirement		requirement								

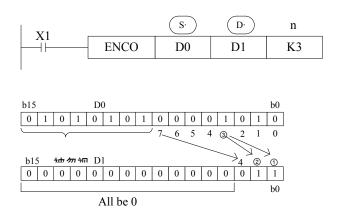
2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
S	data address need coding	16 bits, BIN; bit
D	Coding result address	16 bits, BIN
n	soft element quantity to save result	16 bits, BIN

Word	Operands	System Con									Constant	Module		
		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD	
	S	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•				
	D	•			•	•		•	•	•				
	n										•			
Bit	Operands	Operands				System]					
		Х	Y	N	1	S	T	C	Dn.m					
	S	•	•	•		•	•	•						



< When s is word device > n≤4



- If many bits in the source ID are 1, ignore the low bits. If source ID are all 0, don't execute the instructions.
- When drive input is OFF, the instruction is not executed, encode output doesn't change.
- When n=8, if encode instruction's "S" is bit unit, it's point number is 2^8=256

PLC Software Manual Page 165 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

4-8-10 Low bit coding [ENCOL]

1: Summary

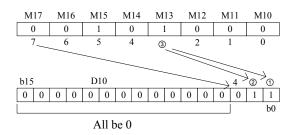
Transform the ASCII to hex numbers.

Low bit coding	[ENCOL]		
16 bits	ENCOL	32 bits	-
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition	edge	Models	
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

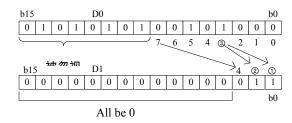
Operands	Function	Data Type
S	Soft element address need coding	16bit,BIN ; bit
D	Soft element address to save coding result	16bit,BIN
n	The soft element quantity to save result	16bit,BIN

Word	Operands	System									Constant	Module		
		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD	
	S	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•				
	D	•			•	•		•	•	•				
	n										•			
Bit	Operands		1	System										
		Х	Y	N	1	S	T	C	Dnm					
	S	•	•	•	,	•	•	•						



< if (s) is word device> n≤4





- If many bits in the source ID are 1, ignore the high bits. If source ID are all 0, don't execute the instructions.
- When drive input is OFF, the instruction is not executed, encode output don't change
- When n=8, if encode instruction's (s) is bit unit, it's point number is 2^8=256

PLC Software Manual Page 167 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



4-9 Floating Operation

Mnemonic	Function	Chapter
ECMP	Float Compare	4-9-1
EZCP	Float Zone Compare	4-9-2
EADD	Float Add	4-9-3
ESUB	Float Subtract	4-9-4
EMUL	Float Multiplication	4-9-5
EDIV	Float Division	4-9-6
ESQR	Float Square Root	4-9-7
SIN	Sine	4-9-8
cos	Cosine	4-9-9
TAN	Tangent	4-9-10
ASIN	ASIN	4-9-11
ACOS	ACOS	4-9-12
ATAN	ATAN	4-9-13

PLC Software Manual Page 168 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

4-9-1 Float Compare [ECMP]

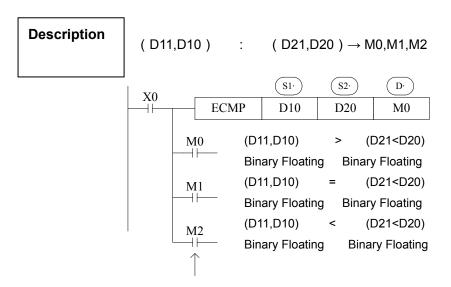
1: Summary

Float Compare	e [ECMP]		
16 bits	-	32 bits	ECMP
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition	edge	Models	
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

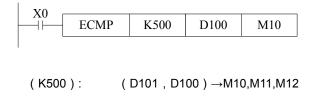
Operands	Function	Data Type
S1	Soft element address need compare	32 bits, BIN
S2	Soft element address need compare	32 bits, BIN
D	Compare result	bit

Word	Operands		System									System							Constant	Module	
		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD								
	S1	•	•				•	•	•	•	•										
	S2	•	•				•	•	•	•	•										
Bit	Operands				-	System]											
		Х	Y	N	1	S	T	C	Dnm												
	D		•	•		•															



The status of the destination device will be kept even if the ECMP instruction is deactivated.

- The binary float data of S1 is compared to S2. The result is indicated by 3 bit devices specified with the head address entered as D
- If a constant K or H used as source data, the value is converted to floating point before the addition operation.



Binary floating

Binary converts

PLC Software Manual Page 170 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

4-9-2 Float Zone Compare [EZCP]

1: Summary

Float Zone Co	mpare [EZCP]		
16 bits	-	32 bits	EZCP
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition	edge	Models	
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

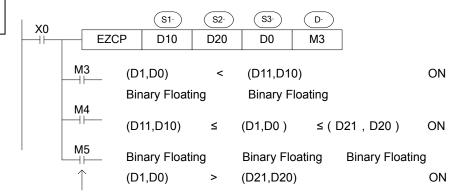
2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
S1	Soft element address need compare	32 bits, BIN
S2	Upper limit of compare data	32 bits, BIN
S3	Lower limit of compare data	32 bits, BIN
D	The compare result soft element address	bit

Word	Operands					Syste	m		Constant	Mod	lule		
		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•				•	•	•	•	•		
	S2	•	•				•	•	•	•	•		
	S3	•	•				•	•	•	•	•		
Bit	Operands					System	ı						
		Х	Y	N	1	S	T	C	Dn.m				
	D		•	•		•							

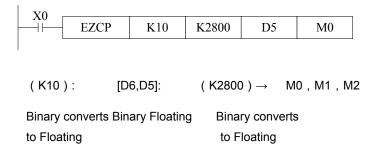
Description

Compare a float range with a float value:



The status of the destination device will be kept even if the EZCP instruction is deactivated.

- The data of S1 is compared to the data of S2. The result is indicated by 3 bit devices specified with the head address entered as D.
- If a constant K or H used as source data, the value is converted to floating point before the addition operation.



Please set S1<S2, when S2>S1, see S2 as the same with S1 and compare them

PLC Software Manual Page 172 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

4-9-3 Float Add[EADD]

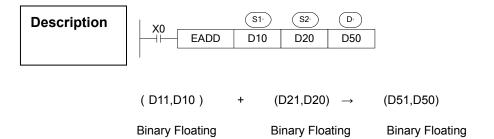
1: Summary

Float Add [EAI	Float Add [EADD]										
16 bits	-	32 bits	EADD								
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM								
condition	edge	Models									
Hardware	-	Software	-								
requirement		requirement									

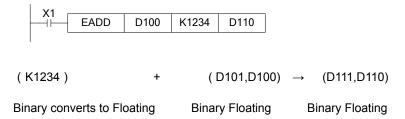
2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
S1	Soft element address need to add	32 bits, BIN
S2	Soft element address need to add	32 bits, BIN
D	Result address	32 bits, BIN

337 1	Operands System									Constant	Mod	lule	
Word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•				•	•	•	•	•		
	S2	•	•				•	•	•	•	•		
	D	•						•	•	•			



- The floating point values stored in the source devices S1 and S2 are algebraically added and the result stored in the destination device D.
- If a constant K or H used as source data, the value is converted to floating point before the addition operation.



• The same device may be used as a source and as the destination. If this is the case then, on continuous operation of the EADD instruction, the result of the previous operation will be used as a new source value and a new result calculated. This will happen in every program scan unless the pulse modifier or an interlock program is used.

PLC Software Manual Page 174 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

4-9-4 Float Sub[ESUB]

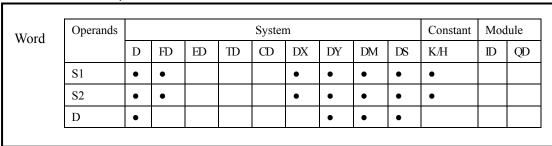
1: Summary

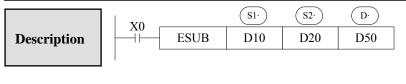
Float Sub [ES	Float Sub [ESUB]										
16 bits	-	32 bits	ESUB								
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM								
condition	edge	Models									
Hardware	-	Software	-								
requirement		requirement									

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
S1	Soft element address need to subtract	32 bits, BIN
S2	Soft element address need to subtract	32 bits, BIN
D	Result address	32 bits, BIN

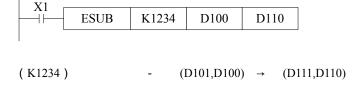
3: Suitable soft components





$$(D11,D10)$$
 - $(D21,D20)$ \rightarrow $(D51,D50)$

- The floating point value of S2 is subtracted from the floating point value of S1 and the result stored in destination device D.
- If a constant K or H used as source data, the value is converted to floating point before the addition operation.



• The same device may be used as a source and as the destination. If this is the case then, on continuous operation of the EADD instruction, the result of the previous operation will be used as a new source value and a new result calculated. This will happen in every program scan unless the pulse modifier or an interlock program is

4-9-5 . Float Mul[EMUL]

1: Summary

Float Multiply	Float Multiply [EMUL]										
16 bits	-	32 bits	EMUL								
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM								
condition	edge	Models									
Hardware	-	Software	-								
requirement		requirement									

2: Operands

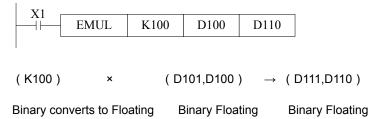
Operands	Function	Data Type
S1	Soft element address need to multiply	32 bits, BIN
S2	Soft element address need to multiply	32 bits, BIN
D	Result address	32 bits, BIN

Word	Operands System									Constant	Mod	lule	
Word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•				•	•	•	•	•		
	S2	•	•				•	•	•	•	•		
	D	•						•	•	•			



(D11, D10)
$$\times$$
 (D21,D20) \rightarrow (D51,D50)

- The floating value of S1 is multiplied with the floating value point value of S2. The result of the multiplication is stored at D as a floating value.
- If a constant K or H used as source data, the value is converted to floating point before the addition operation.



4-9-6 Float Div[EDIV]

1: Summary

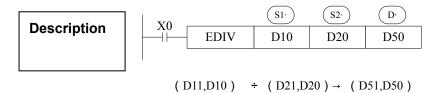
Float Divide [EDIV]										
16 bits	-	32 bits	EDIV							
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM							
condition	edge	Models								
Hardware	-	Software	-							
requirement		requirement								

2: Operands

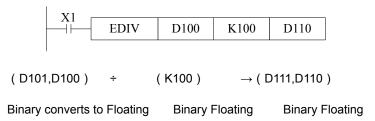
Operands	Function	Data Type
S1	Soft element address need to divide	32 bits, BIN
S2	Soft element address need to divide	32 bits, BIN
D	Result address	32 bits, BIN

3: Suitable soft components

word	Operands System										Constant	Mod	lule
word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•				•	•	•	•	•		
	S2	•	•				•	•	•	•	•		
	D	•						•	•	•			



- The floating point value of S1 is divided by the floating point value of S2. The result of the division is stored in D as a floating point value. No remainder is calculated.
- If a constant K or H used as source data, the value is converted to floating point before the addition operation



NB: If S2 is 0, the calculate is error, the instruction can not work

PLC Software Manual Page 177 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

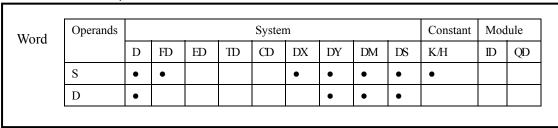
4-9-7 Float Square Root [ESQR]

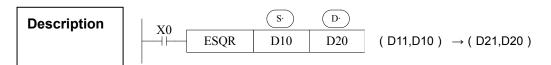
1: Summary

Float Square F	Float Square Root [ESQR]										
16 bits	-	32 bits	ESQR								
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM								
condition	edge	Models									
Hardware	-	Software	-								
requirement		requirement									

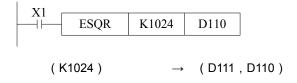
2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
S	The soft element address need to do square root	32 bits, BIN
D	The result address	32 bits, BIN





- A square root is performed on the floating point value in S the result is stored in D
- If a constant K or H used as source data, the value is converted to floating point before the addition operation.



Binary converts to Floating Binary Floating

- When the result is zero, zero flag activates.
- Only when the source data is positive will the operation be effective. If S is negative
 then an error occurs and error flag M8067 is set ON, the instruction can't be
 executed.

4-9-8 Sine[SIN]

1: Summary

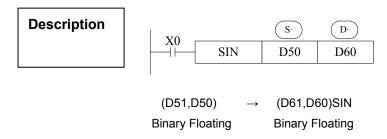
Float Sine[SIN]					
16 bits	-	32 bits	SIN		
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM		
condition	edge	Models			
Hardware	-	Software	-		
requirement		requirement			

2: Operands

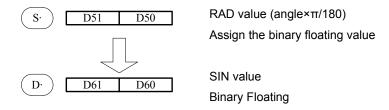
Operands	Function	Data Type
S	The soft element address need to do sine	32 bits, BIN
D	The result address	32 bits, BIN

3: Suitable soft components

W J	Operands		System							Constant Module			
Word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S	•	•				•	•	•	•	•		
	D	•						•	•	•			



 This instruction performs the mathematical SIN operation on the floating point value in S (angle RAD). The result is stored in D.



4-9-9 Cosine[SIN]

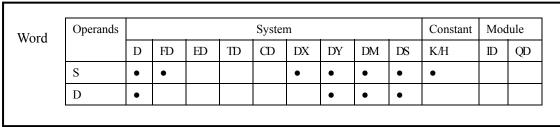
1: Summary

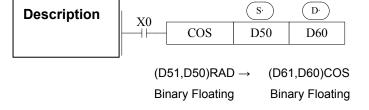
Float Cosine[COS]					
16 bits	-	32 bits	cos		
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM		
condition	edge	Models			
Hardware	-	Software	-		
requirement		requirement			

2: Operands

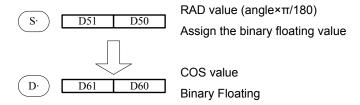
Operands	Function	Data Type
S	Soft element address need to do cos	32 bits, BIN
D	Result address	32 bits, BIN

3: Suitable soft components





 This instruction performs the mathematical COS operation on the floating point value in S (angle RAD). The result is stored in D.



PLC Software Manual Page 180 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

4-9-10 TAN [TAN]

1: Summary

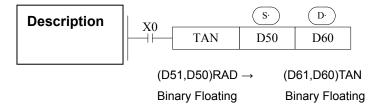
TAN [TAN]			
16 bits	-	32 bits	TAN
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition	edge	Models	
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

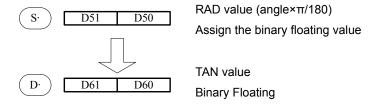
Operands	Function	Data Type
S	Soft element address need to do tan	32bit,BIN
D	Result address	32bit,BIN

3: Suitable soft components

Operands		System								Constant	Module	
	D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
S	•	•				•	•	•	•	•		
D	•						•	•	•			
	S	D S •	D FD S • •	D FD ED S • •	D FD ED TD S • • •	D FD ED TD CD S • •	D FD ED TD CD DX S • • • • • • •	D FD ED TD CD DX DY S • • • • • •	D FD ED TD CD DX DY DM S • • • • • • •	D FD ED TD CD DX DY DM DS S • • • • • • • •	D FD ED TD CD DX DY DM DS K/H S • • • • • • • •	D FD ED TD CD DX DY DM DS K/H ID S • • • • • • • • •



• This instruction performs the mathematical TAN operation on the floating point value in S. The result is stored in D.



4-9-11 ASIN [ASIN]

1: Summary

ASIN [ASIN]			
16 bits	-	32 bits	ASIN
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition	edge	Models	
Hardware	V3.0 and above version	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
S	Soft element address need to do arcsin	32 bits, BIN
D	Result address	32 bits, BIN

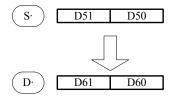
3: Suitable soft components

Word	Operands		System									Mod	Module	
word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD	
	S	•	•				•	•	•	•	•			
	D	•						•	•	•				



 $\begin{array}{ll} \text{(D51,D50)ASIN} \rightarrow & \text{(D61,D60)RAD} \\ \text{Binary Floating} & \text{Binary Floating} \end{array}$

• This instruction performs the mathematical ASIN operation on the floating point value in S. The result is stored in D.



ASIN value Binary Floating

RAD value (angle×π/180)
Assign the binary floating value

4-9-12 ACOS [ACOS]

1: Summary

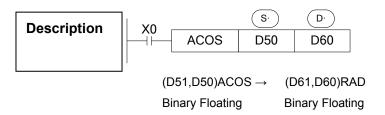
ACOS [ACOS]		
16 bits	-	32 bits	ACOS
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition	edge	Models	
Hardware	V3.0 and above	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

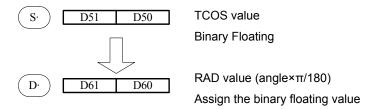
Operands	Function	Data Type
S	Soft element address need to do arccos	32 bits, BIN
D	Result address	32 bits, BIN

3: Suitable soft components

	Operands					Syste	m				Constant	Mod	lule
Word	Operands	D	ED	ED	770		1	DW	DM	DC			
		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S	•	•				•	•	•	•	•		
	D	•						•	•	•			
		l	l	1	1	1		1	<u>l</u>				<u> </u>



• Calculate the arcos value(radian), save the result in the target address



4-9-13 ATAN [ATAN]

1: Summary

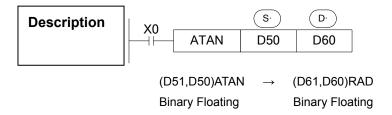
ATAN [ATAN]			
16 bits	-	32 bits	ACOS
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM
condition	edge	Models	
Hardware	V3.0 and above	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

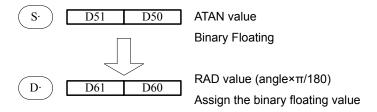
Operands	Function	Data Type
S	Soft element address need to do arctan	32 bit, BIN
D	Result address	32 bit, BIN

3: Suitable soft components

Word	Operands					Syster	n		_		Constant	Mod	lule
Word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S	•	•				•	•	•	•	•		
	D	•						•	•	•			



• Calculate the arctan value (radian), save the result in the target address





4-10 RTC Instructions

Mnemonic	Function	Chapter			
TRD	Clock data read	4-10-1			
TWR	Clock data write	4-10-2			

 \normalfootnotemark 1: Only available on models equipped with RTC function.

4-10-1 Read the clock data [TRD]

1: Instruction Summary

Read the clock data:

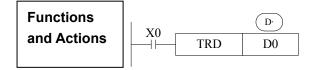
Read the clock data: [TRD]								
16 bits	TRD	32 bits	-					
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM					
condition	edge	Models						
Hardware	V2.51 and above	Software	-					
requirement		requirement						

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
D	Register to save clock data	16 bits, BIN

3: Suitable Soft Components

*** 1	Operands System							Constant Module					
Word	operands	D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	D	•			•	•							



The current time and date of the real time clock are read and stored in the 7 data devices specified by the head address D.

Read PLC's real time clock according to the following format.
 The reading source is the special data register (D8013~D8019) which save clock data.

		Unit	Item	Clock data		Unit	Item
	S	D8018	Year	0-99	→	D0	Year
Te	Speci	D8017	Month	1-12		D1	Month
real ti	<u>a</u>	D8016	Date	1-31	→	D2	Date
time o	data r	D8015	Hour	0-23	→	D3	Hour
clock t	register	D8014	Minute	0-59	→	D4	Minute
÷		D8013	Second	0-59	→	D5	Second
	for	D8019	Week	0 (Sun.)-6 (Sat.)	→	D	Week

PLC Software Manual Page 186 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

4-10-2 Write Clock Data [TWR]

1: Instruction Summary

Write the clock data:

Write clock data [TRD]								
16 bits	-	32 bits	TRD					
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	XC2.XC3.XC5.XCM					
condition	edge	Models						
Hardware	V2.51 and above	Software	-					
requirement		requirement						

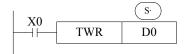
2: Operands

Operands	Function	Data Type
S	Write the clock data to the register	16 bits, BIN

3: Suitable Soft Components

Word	Operands System							Constant	Module				
word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•			





The 7 data devices specified with the head address S are used to set a new current value of the real time clock.

(3) Write the set clock data into PLC's real time clock.

In order to write real time clock, the 7 data devices specified with the head address $\overline{(S^{\cdot})}$ should be pre-set.

	Unit	Item	Clock data		Unit	Item	
	D10	Year	0-99	→	D8018	Year	(0
D	D11	Month	1-12	→	D8017	Month	Special real
Data fo	D12	Date	1-31	→	D8016	Date	
for clo	D13	Hour	0-23	→	D8015	Hour	data r
clock s	D14	Minute	0-59	→	D8014	Minute	regist
setting	D15	Second	0-59	→	D8013	Second	register for clock t
Ğ	D16	Week	0 (Sun.)-6	→	D8019	Week	7

After executing TWR instruction, the time in real time clock will immediately change to be the new set time. So, when setting the time it is a good idea to set the source data to a time a number of minutes ahead and then drive the instruction when the real time reaches this value.

5

High Speed Counter (HSC)

In this chapter we explore high speed counter's functions, including high speed count model, wiring method, read/write HSC value, reset etc.

5-1 . Functions Summary
5-2 . High Speed Counter's Mode
5-3 . High Speed Counter's Range
5-4 . Input Wiring of High Speed Counter
5-5 . Input Terminals Assignment for HSC
5-6 . Read and Write The HSC Value
5-7 . Reset Mode of HSC
5-8 . Frequency Multiplication of AB Phase HSC
5-9 . HSC Examples
5-10 . HSC Interruption

Instructions List for HSC

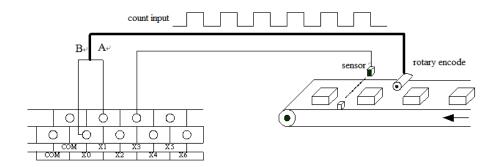
MNEMONIC	FUNCTION	CIRCUIT AND SOFT COMPONENTS	CHAPTER
READ/WRITE	HIGH SPEED COUNTER		
HSCR	Read HSC	HSCR S D	5-6-1
HSCW	Write HSC	HSOW S D	5-6-2
OUT	HSC (High Speed Counter)	BSTOP S1 S2	3-13
OUT	24 segments HSC Interruption	Cn Kn D	5-10
RST	HSC Reset	BGOON S1 S2	3-13

PLC Software Manual Page 189 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



5-1 Functions Summary

XC series PLCs have an HSC (High Speed Counter) function which is independent of the scan cycle. By choosing different counters, the high speed input signals can be tested with detect sensors and rotary encoders. The highest testing frequency can reach 80KHz.



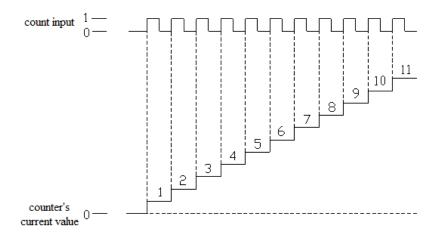
PLC Software Manual Page 190 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



The XC Series' high speed counter function has three count modes: Increment Mode, Pulse + Direction Mode and AB phase Mode;

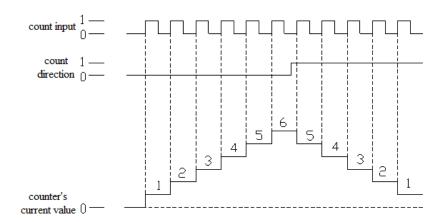
Increment Mode

Under this mode, count and input the pulse signal, the count value increase at each pulse's rising edge;



Pulse + Direction Mode

Under this mode, the pulse signal and direction signal are inputted, the count value increases or decreases with the direction signal's status. When the count signal is OFF, the count input's rising edge carry on plus count; When the count signal is ON, the count input's rising edge carry on minus count;



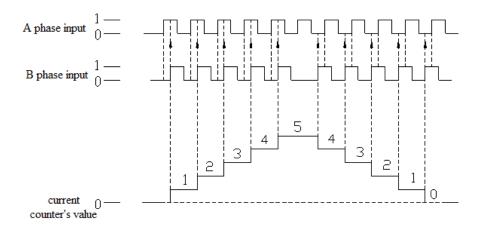
PLC Software Manual Page 191 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

AB Phase Mode

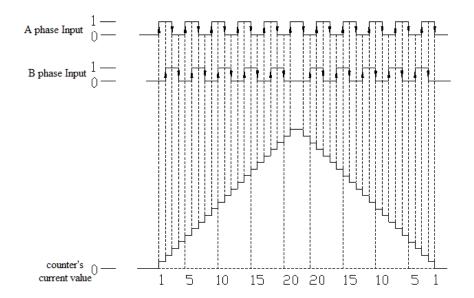
Under this mode, the HSC value increases or decreases according to two differential signals (A phase and B phase). There are two frequyency modes available: 1-time frequency and 4-time frequency. The default count mode is 4-time mode.

1-time frequency and 4-time frequency modes are shown below:

• 1-time Frequency



4-time Frequency





5-3 HSC Range

HSC's count range is: K-2, 147, 483, 648 \sim K+2, 147, 483, 647. If the count value overflows this range, then up flow or down flow appears;

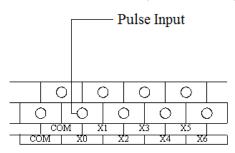
For "up flow", it means the count value jumps from K+2, 147, 483, 647 to be K-2, 147, 483, 648, then continues to count; For "down flow", it means the count value jumps from K-2, 147, 483, 648 to be K+2, 147, 483, 647 then continues to count.



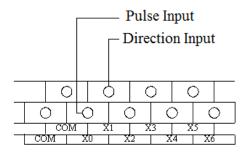
5-4 HSC Input Wiring

For the counter's pulse input wiring, things differ with different PLC models and counter models; several typical input wiring methods are shown below: (take XC3-48 as the example):

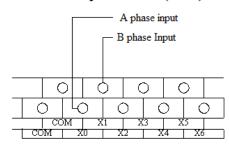
increment mode (Counter C600)



Pulse+Direction Mode (C620)



AB phase Mode (C630)



PLC Software Manual Page 193 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



5-5 HSC Ports Assignment

Description of Letters:

U	Dir	A	В
Pulse input	Count Direction Judgment	A phase input	B phase input
	(OFF=increment, ON=decrement)		

Normally, X0 and X1 can accept 80KHz frequency under single phase mode and AB phase mode. Other terminals can accept only 10KHz under single phase mode, 5KHz under AB phase mode. X can use as normal input terminals when they are not used as high speed input. The detailed assignment is shown as below:

							X	C2 Se	ries	PLC								
					Incre	ment						Pulse	e+Dir	Input		AB F	hase	Mode
	C60	C60	C60	C60	C60	C61	C61	C61	C61	C61	C62	C62	C62	C62	C62	C63	C63	C634
	0	2	4	6	8	0	2	4	6	8	0	2	4	6	8	0	2	C034
Max.F	80K	80K	10K	10K	10K						80K	10K				80K	5K	
4-times F																$\sqrt{}$		
Count Interrupt	√	√	V	V	√						V					V		
X000	U										U					Α		
X001		U									Dir					В		
X002																		
X003			J									J					Α	
X004												Dir					В	
X005																		
X006				U														
X007					U													
X010																		
X011																		
X012																		

					Incre	ment						Pulse	+Dir	Input	t		3 Pha Mode	
	C60	C60	C60	C60	C60	C61	C61	C61	C61	C61	C62	C62	C62	C62	C62	C63	C63	C63
	0	2	4	6	8	0	2	4	6	8	0	2	4	6	8	0	2	4
*Max.F	10K	10K	10K	10K							10K	10K				5K		
4-times F																		
Count	ا	اما	V	اما								اء						
Interrupt	1	1	٧	√								V						
X000	U										U					Α		
X001											Dir					В		
X002		U																
X003			U															
X004																		
X005				U														

^{*} C600、C620、C630 can support 80KHz with special requirement

							>	(C3-1	9AR-	E								
					Incre	ment						Pulse	+Dir	Input	•	AE	3 Pha	se
																	Mode	;
	C60	C60	C60	C60	C60	C61	C61	C61	C61	C61	C62	C62	C62	C62	C62	C63	C63	C63
	0	2	4	6	8	0	2	4	6	8	0	2	4	6	8	0	2	4
Max.F	10K	10K	10K	10K							10K	10K				5K	5K	
4-times F																	1	
Count	√	√	V	V								V					V	
Interrupt		٧	٧	٧								V					V	
X000	J										U					Α		
X001											Dir					В		
X002		J										U					Α	
X003												Dir					В	
X004			J															
X005				U														

XC3-24、32 PLC and XC5-48、60 PLC

					Incre	ment						Pulea	e+Dir	Innut		ΑE	3 Pha	ise
					IIICIC	mont						i uisc	ווטי,	прис			Mode	;
	C60	C60	C60	C60	C60	C61	C61	C61	C61	C61	C62	C62	C62	C62	C62	C63	C63	C63
	0	2	4	6	8	0	2	4	6	8	0	2	4	6	8	0	2	4
Max.F	80K	80K	10K	10K	10K	10K					80K	10K	10K			80K	5K	5K
4-times F																$\sqrt{}$		\checkmark
Count	V	4	√	ام	√	ام					V							
Interrupt	V	٧	٧	√	٧	V					V					V		
X000	U										J					Α		
X001		U									Dir					В		
X002																		
X003			\Box									U					Α	
X004												Dir					В	
X005																		
X006				U									U					Α
X007													Dir					В
X010																		
X011					U													
X012						U												

							хсз	3-48、	60	PLC								
					Incre	ment						Pulse	+Dir	Input			3 Pha Mode	
	C60	C60	C60	C60	C60	C61	C61	C61	C61	C61	C62	C62	C62	C62	C62	C63	C63	C63
	0	2	4	6	8	0	2	4	6	8	0	2	4	6	8	0	2	4
Max.F	80K	80K	10K	10K							80K	80K				80K	80K	
4-times F																	V	
Count Interrupt	V	V	V	V								V					V	
X000	U										J					Α		
X001											Dir					В		
X002		U										U					Α	
X003												Dir					В	
X004			U															
X005				U														

XC5-24/32 PLC、XCM-24/32 PLC

					Incre	ment						Pulse	+Dir	Input			3 Pha Mode	
	C60	C60	C60	C60	C60	C61	C61	C61	C61	C61	C62	C62	C62	C62	C62	C63		
	0	2	4	6	8	0	2	4	6	8	0	2	4	6	8	0	2	4
Max.F	80K	10K									80K					80K		
4-times F																√		
Count	V	V									V					√		
Interrupt	'	•														•		
X000	U										U					Α		
X001											Dir					В		
X002																		
X003		U																
X004																		
X005																		
X006																		



5-6 Read/Write HSC value

All high speed counters support read instruction [HSCR] and write instruction [HSCW]. Hardware must be V3.1c and above.

5-6-1 Read HSC value [HSCR]

1: Instruction Summary

Read HSC value to the specified register;

Read from HS	C [HSCR]/ write to HSC [HSCW]		
16 bits	-	32 bits	HSCR
Instruction		Instruction	
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable	VC2 VC2 VCE VCM
condition	edge	models	XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM
Hardware	V3.1c and above	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Туре
S	Specify HSC code	32 bits, BIN
D	Specify the read/written register	32 bits, BIN

3: Suitable Soft Components

word	operan					syster	m				consta	mod	lule
Word	ds										nt		
		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S					•							
									J			I	1

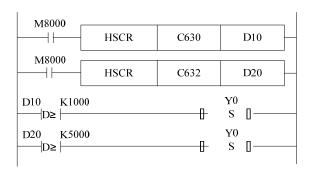
PLC Software Manual Page 198 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

Functions and Actions



- When the activate condition is true, read the HSC value in C630 (DWORD) into D10 (DWORD)
- Instruction HSCR reads the HSC value into the specified register, improve HSC value's precision.

Sample Program:



5-6-2 Write HSC Value [HSCW]

1: Instruction Summary

Write the specified register value into HSC;

Write HSC val	ue [HSCW]			
16 bits	-	32	bits	HSCW
Instruction		Instructi	on	
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising/falling	Suitable)	VC2 VC2 VCE VCM
condition	edge	models		XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM
Hardware	V3.1c and above	Software	е	-
requirement		requiren	nent	

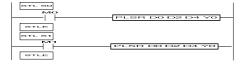
2: Operands

Operands	Function	Туре
S	Specify HSC code	32 bits, BIN
D	Specify the read/written register	32 bits, BIN

3: Suitable soft components

	operands					syster	n				constant	mod	lule
Word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S					•							
	D	•											
	D	•											

Functions and Actions



- When the activated condition is true, write the value in D20 (DWORD) into C630 (DWORD), the original value is replaced;
- We suggest users to apply high speed counter only with HSCR and HSCW, not with other instructions like DMOV, LD>, DMUL etc. and users must run after converting HSC to be other registers.



5-7 HSC Reset Mode

Reset HSC via software:



In the above graph, when M0 is ON, C600 starts to count the input pulse on X0; when M1 changes from OFF to be ON, reset C600, clears the count value



5-8 AB Phase Counter Multiplication Setting

About AB phase counter, modify the frequency multiplication value via setting FLASH data register FD8241, FD8242, FD8243. If the value is 1, it is 1-time frequency, if it is 4, it is 4-time frequency.

Register	Function	Set Value	Meaning
FD8241	Frequency multiplication of C630	1	1-time frequency
	Frequency multiplication of Coso	4	4-time frequency
FD8242	Frequency multiplication of C632	1	1-time frequency
	Prequency multiplication of Co32	4	4-time frequency
ED0040	Fraguency multiplication of C624	1	1-time frequency
FD8243	Frequency multiplication of C634	4	4-time frequency

PLC Software Manual Page 201 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



Increment Mode

5-9 HSC Examples

Below, we take XC3-60 PLC as the example, to introduce HSC's program form;



- When M0 is ON, C600 starts the HSC with the OFF→ON of X000;
- When comes the rising edge of M1, reset HSC C600

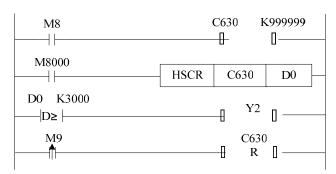
C600 K8888888 M8000 \dashv \vdash **HSCR** C600 D0M1 C600 П-R D0D2 1D0 H D2 D0 D4 d≥ | --|D0 |-D0 D4 Y2 | -D≥ ⊦

- When normally ON coil M8000 is ON, set the value of C600, the set value is K88888888, read the HSC value (DWORD) into data register D0 (DWORD).
- If the value in C600 is smaller than value in D2, set the output coil Y0 ON; If the value in C600 equals or be larger than value in D2, and smaller than value in D4, set the output coil Y1 ON; If the value in C600 equals or be larger than value in D4, set the output coil Y2 ON;
- When comes the rising edge of M1, resets HSC C600 and stops counting.

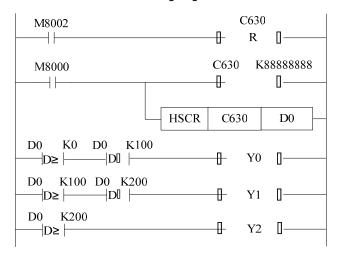
Pulse+Direction Mode

- When M4 is ON, C620 starts the HSC with the OFF→ON of X000; judge the count direction according to the input X001 status (OFF or ON). If X001 is OFF, it's increment count; if X001 is ON, it's decrement count;
- When it reaches the rising edge of M5, it will reset HSC C620 and stop counting.

PLC Software Manual Page 202 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



- When M8 is ON, C630 starts to count immediately. Count input via X000 (B Phase).
 X001 (A Phase)
- When the count value exceeds K3000, output coil Y2 is ON;
- When comes the rising edge of M9, it resets HSC C630



- When the rising edge of initial positive pulse coil M8002 comes, i.e. Each scan cycle starts, HSC C630 reset and clear the count value.
- When set coil M8000 ON, C630 starts to count, the count value is set to be K88888888.
- If the count value is greater than K0 but smaller than K100, the output coil Y0 set ON; If the count value is greater thanK100 but smaller than K200 时, the output coil Y1 set ON; If the count value is greater thanK200, the output coilY2 set ON;

PLC Software Manual Page 203 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



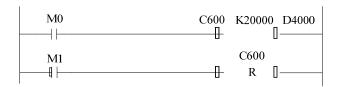
5-10 HSC Interruption

To XC series PLC, each HSC channels has 24 segments 32-bit pre-set value. When the HSC difference value equals the correspond 24-segment pre-set value, then interruption occurs according to the interruption tag;

To use this function, please use hardware V3.1c or above;

5-10-1 Instruction Description

(for Interruption program instructions, please refer chapter 5-10-4)



```
LDM0//HSC activate condition M0 (interruption count condition)OUTC600K20000D4000//HSC value and set the start ID of 24-segmentLDPM1//activate condition resetRSTC600//HSC and 24-segment reset (interruption reset)
```

As shown in the above graph, data register D4000 is the start ID of 24-segment pre-set value area. As a back-up, save each pre-set value in DWORD form. Please pay attention when using HSC:

- If certain pre-set value is 0, it means count interruption stops at this segment;
- Set the interruption pre-set value but not write the correspond interruption program is not allowed:
- 24-segment interruption of HSC occurs in order. I.e. If the first segment interruption doesn't happen, then the second segment interruption will not happen;
- 24-segment pre-set value can be specified to be relative value or absolute value.
 Meantime, users can specify the set value to be loop or not. But the loop mode can't be used together with absolute value.

PLC Software Manual Page 204 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

5-10-2 Instruction tags to HSC

In the below table, we list each counter's 24-segment pre-set value to its interruption tag. E.g.: 24-segment pre-set value of counter C600 correspond with the interruption pointer:

11001、11002、11003、...11024.

Increment Mode

Counter	Interruption tag
C600	I1001~I1024
C602	I1101~I1124
C604	I1201~I1224
C606	I1301~I1324
C608	I1401~I1424
C610	I1501~I1524
C612	I1601~I1624
C614	I1701~I1724
C616	I1801~I1824
C618	l1901~l1924

Define the preset value

Pulse + Direction Mode

Counter	Interruption tag
C620	I2001~I2024
C622	I2101~I2124
C624	I2201~I2224
C626	I2301~I2324
C628	I2401~I2424

AB Phase Mode

Counter	Interruption tag
C630	I2501~I2524
C632	I2601~I2624
C634	I2701~I2724
C636	I2801~I2824
C638	I2901~I2924

HSC 24-segment pre-set value is the difference value, the count value equals the counter's current value plus the preset value, self-generating the interruption. N interruption tags correspond with N interruption preset values. The (N+1) preset value is 0;

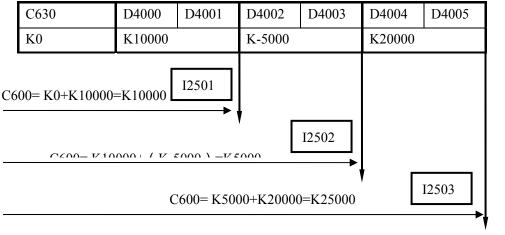
E.g. 1, the current value is C630 is 0, the first preset value is 10000, the preset value in segment 2 is - 5000, and the preset value in segment 3 is 20000.

When counting begins: if the counter's current value is 10000, the first interruption I2501 will be generated.

When counting begins: if the counter's current value is 5000, the first interruption I2502 will be generated.

When counting begings: if the counter's current value is 25000, the first interruption I2503 will be generated.

See graph below:



PLC Software Manual Page 205 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

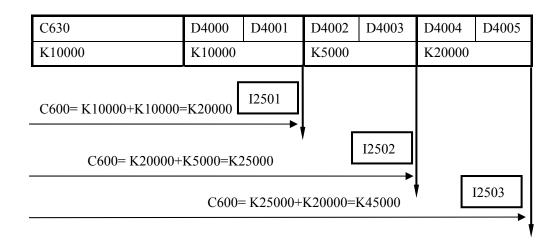
E.g. 2, the current value is C630 is 10000, the first preset value is 10000, the preset value in segment 2 is 5000, the preset value in segment 3 is 20000.

When count begins, if the counter's current value is 20000, this generates first interruption at I2501;

When count begins, if the counter's current value is 25000, this generates first interruption at I2502:

When count begins, if the counter's current value is 45000, this generates first interruption at I2503.

See graph below:



PLC Software Manual Page 206 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

5-10-3 Loop Mode of HSC Interruption

Mode 1: Unicycle (normal mode)

Not happen after HSC interruption ends. The conditions below can re-start the interruption:

- (1) reset the HSC
- (2) Reboot the HSC activate condition

Mode 2: Continuous loop

Restart after HSC interruption ends. This mode is especially suitable for the following application:

- (7) continuous back-forth movement
- (8) Generate cycle interruption according to the defined pulse

With setting the special auxiliary relays, users can set the HSC interruption to be unicycle mode or continuous loop mode. The loop mode is only suitable with the relative count. The detailed assignment is show below:

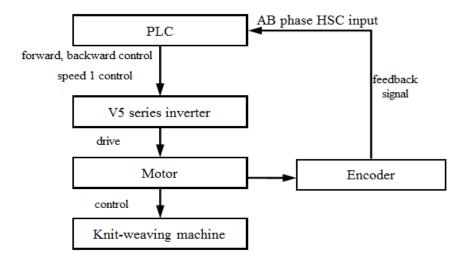
ID	HSC ID	Setting
M8270	24 segments HSC interruption loop (C600)	
M8271	24 segments HSC interruption loop (C602)	
M8272	24 segments HSC interruption loop (C604)	
M8273	24 segments HSC interruption loop (C606)	
M8274	24 segments HSC interruption loop (C608)	
M8275	24 segments HSC interruption loop (C610)	
M8276	24 segments HSC interruption loop (C612)	
M8277	24 segments HSC interruption loop (C614)	OFF: uniquele made
M8278	24 segments HSC interruption loop (C616)	OFF: unicycle mode
M8279	24 segments HSC interruption loop (C618)	ON: continuous loop mode
M8280	24 segments HSC interruption loop (C620)	
M8281	24 segments HSC interruption loop (C622)	
M8282	24 segments HSC interruption loop (C624)	
M8283	24 segments HSC interruption loop (C626)	
M8284	24 segments HSC interruption loop (C628)	
M8285	24 segments HSC interruption loop (C630)	
M8286	24 segments HSC interruption loop (C632)	
M8287	24 segments HSC interruption loop (C634)	

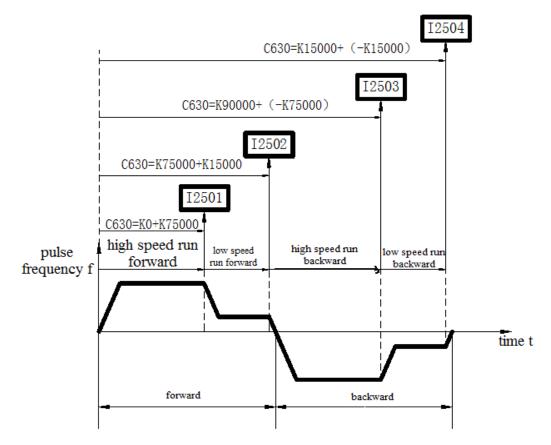
PLC Software Manual Page 207 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

5-10-4 Example of HSC Interruption

E.g.2: Application on knit-weaving machine (continuous loop mode)

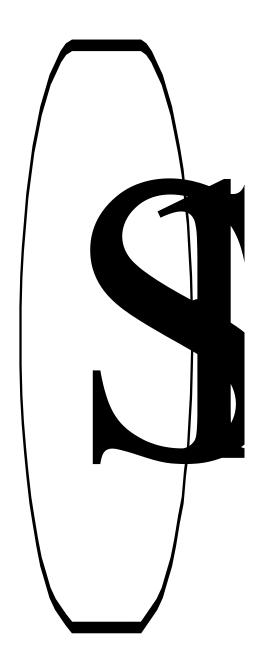
The system theory is shown as below: Control of the inverter via PLC, Processing the movement, via the feedback signal from encoder, control the knit-weaving machine and realize the precise position.





PLC Software Manual Page 208 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

Below is PLC program: Y2 represents forward output signal; Y3 represents backward output signal; Y4 represents output signal of speed 1; C340: Back-forth times accumulation counter; C630: AB phase HSC;



PLC Software Manual Page 209 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

Instruction List Form:

LD SET	M8002 M8285			//M8002 is initial positive pulse coil //special auxiliary relay set ON, to enable C630 continuous loop
SET LDP	Y2 Y2			//set output coil Y2 (i.e. Start run forth) //knit-weaving machine back-forth times counter's activate condition Y2(forth rising edge activate)
OUT LD DMOV DMOV DMOV LD OUT LD HSCR FEND 12501 LD SET IRET 12502 LD RST RST SET IRET 12503 LD SET IRET 12503 LD SET IRET 12503	C340 M8000 K75000 K15000 K-75000 K-75000 M-75000 M8000 C630 M8000 C630 M8000 Y4 M8000 Y4 Y2 Y3 M8000 Y4	K1000000 D4000 D4002 D4004 D4006 K30000000 D200	D4000	//counter C340 starts to count //M8000 is normally ON coil //set segment-1 ID D4000 to be K75000 //set segment-2 D4002 to be K15000 //set segment-3 D4004 to be K-75000 //set segment-4 D4004 to be K-75000 //set segment-4 D4004 to be K-15000 //M8000 is normally ON coil //HSC and start ID of 24-segment //M8000 is normally ON coil //read the HSC value of C630 to D200 //main program end //interruption tag of segment 1 //M8000 is normally ON coil //output coil Y4 set (low-speed run with speed 1) //interruption return tag ///interruption tag of segment 2 //M8000 is normally ON coil //output coil Y4 reset (low-speed run stop) //output coil Y2 reset (run forward stops) //output coil Y3 set (back running) //interruption return tag ///interruption tag of segment 3 //M8000 is normally ON coil //output coil Y4 set (low-speed run with speed 1) //interruption return tag ///interruption return tag
LD RST RST SET IRET	M8000 Y3 Y4 Y2			//M8000 is normally ON coil //output coil Y3 reset (back running stop) //output coil Y4 reset (low-speed run stop) //output coil Y2 set (run forward) //interruption return tag

6 Pulse Output

In this chapter we explain the pulse function of XC series PLCs. The content includes pulse output instructions, input/output wiring, items to note in relation to coils and registers etc.

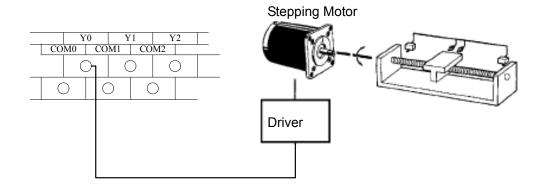
6-1 . Functions Summary
6-2 . Pulse Output Types and Instructions
6-3 . Output Wiring
6-4 . Items to Note
6-5 . Sample Programs
6-6 . Coils and Registers in relation to Pulse Output

Mnemonic	Function	Circuit And Soft Device	Chapter					
PULSE OUTPUT								
PLSY	Unidirectional ration pulse output without ACC/DEC time change	PLSY S1 S2 D	6-2-1					
PLSF	Variable frequency pulse output	PLSF S D	6-2-2					
PLSR	Ration pulse output with ACC/DEC speed	PLSR S1 S2 S3 D	6-2-3					
PLSNEXT/ PLSNT	Pulse Section Switch	PLSNT S	6-2-4					
STOP	Pulse Stop	STOP S	6-2-5					
PLSMV	Refresh Pulse Nr. immediately	PLSMV S D	6-2-6					
ZRN	Original Return	ZRN S1 S2 S3 D	6-2-7					
DRVI	Relative Position Control	DRVI S1 S2 S3 D1 D2	6-2-8					
DRVA	Absolute Position Control	DRVA S1 S2 S3 D1 D2	6-2-9					
PLSA	Absolute Position multi-section pulse control	PLSA S1 S2 D	6-2-10					



6-1 Functions Summary

Generally, XC3 and XC5 series PLC are equipped with 2CH pulse output function. Via different instructions, users can realize unidirectional pulse output without ACC/DEC speed; unidirectional pulse output with ACC/DEC speed; multi-segments, positive/negative output etc., the output frequency can reach 400K Hz.



※ 1: To use pulse output, please choose PLC with transistor output, like XC3-14T-E or XC3-60RT-E etc.

X2: XC5 series 32I/O PLC has 4CH (Y0, Y1, Y2, Y3) pulse output function.

PLC Software Manual Page 213 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



6-2 Pulse Output Types and Instructions

6-2-1 Unidirectional ration pulse output without ACC/DEC time change [PLSY]

1: Instruction Summary

Instruction to generate ration pulse with the specified frequency;

Unidirectional ration pulse output without ACC/DEC time change [PLSY]										
16 bits	PLSY	32 bits	DPLSY							
instruction		instruction								
Execution	Normally ON/OFF coil	Suitable	VC2 VC2 VCE VCM							
condition		models	XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM							
Hardware	-	Software	-							
requirement		requirements								

2: Operands

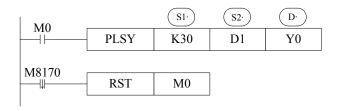
Operands	Function	Туре
S1	Specify the frequency's value or register ID	16 bits/32 bits, BIN
S2	Specify the pulse number or register's ID	16 bits /32 bits, BIN
D	Specify the pulse output port	bit

3: Suitable soft components

and the second of the second o													
Word	operands		system								constant	module	
		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•					•		
	S2	•	•		•	•					•		
Bit	operands				sys	tem							
		Х	Υ	М	S	Т	С	. [On.m				
	D		•										

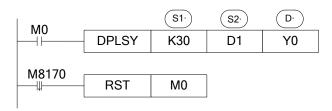
Functions and Actions

《16 bits Instruction》



- Frequency Range: 0~400KHz;
- Pulse Quantity Range: 0~K32767;
- Pulse output from Y000 or Y001 only;
- When M0 is ON, PLSY instruction output 30Hz pulse at Y0, the pulse number is decided by D1, M8170 is set ON only when sending the pulse. When the output pulse number reaches the set value, stop sending the pulse, M8170 is set to be OFF, reset M0;

《32 bits Instruction》



- Frequency Range: 0~400KHz;
- Pulse Quantity Range: 0~K2147483647;
- Pulse output from Y000 or Y001 only;
- When M0 is ON, DPLSY instruction output 30Hz pulse at Y0, the pulse number is decided by D2D1, M8170 is set ON only when sending the pulse. When the output pulse number reaches the set value, stop sending the pulse, M8170 is set to be OFF, reset M0;

	Output Mode			
	《 continuous or	limited pulse numl	ber»	
Limi	ited pulse output		-Set pulse r	number
	When finish se	ending the set pulse	number, stop outpu	tting automatically
	Items to Note			

If the control object is stepping/servo motor, we recemend users not use this instruction, to avoid the motor losing synchronism. PLSR is available.

6-2-2 Variable Pulse Output [PLSF]

1: Instruction Summary

Instruction to generate continuous pulse in the form of variable frequency

Variable Puls	e Output [PLSF]		
16 bits	PLSF	32 bits	DPLSF
Instruction		Instruction	
Execution	Normally ON/OFF coil	Suitable	XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM
condition		Models	XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Туре
S	Specify the frequency or register ID	16 bits/32 bits, BIN
D	Specify pulse output port	bit

Word	operands					syste	m				constant	mod	dule
VVOIG		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S	•	•		•	•					•		
		1											
Bit	operands				sys	tem							
		Х	Υ	М	S	Т	С	;	Dn.m				
	D		•										
	•	•		•	•								

《16 bit instruction form》



- Frequency range: 6Hz~400KHz (when the set frequency is lower than 200Hz, output 200Hz)
- Pulse can only be output at Y000 or Y001.
- With the changing of setting frequency in D0, the output pulse frequency changes at Y0

《32 bit instruction form》



- Frequency range: 6Hz~400KHz (when the set frequency is lower than 200Hz, output 200Hz)
- Pulse can only be output at Y000 or Y001.
- With the changing of setting frequency in D0, the output pulse frequency changes at Y0
- Accumulate pulse number in register D8170 (DWord)

Output Mode

Sequential pulse output

Sequential output pulse with the set frequency till stop output via the instruction

6-2-3 Multi-segment pulse control at relative position [PLSR]

PLSR/DPLSR instruction has two control modes. Below we will introduce one by one;

> Mode 1: segment uni-directional pulse output PLSR

1: Instruction Summary

Generate certain pulse quantity (segmented) with the specified frequency and acceleration/deceleration time

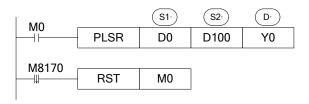
Segmented u	ni-directional pulse output [PLS	R]	
16 bits	PLSR	32 bits	DPLSR
Instruction		Instruction	
Execution	Normally ON/OFF coil	Suitable	XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM
condition		Models	XC2, XC3, XC5, XCIVI
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

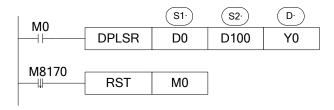
Operands	Function	Туре
S1	Specify the soft component's start ID of the segmented	16 bit/ 32 bit, BIN
	pulse parameters	
S2	Specify acceleration/deceleration time or soft	16 bit/ 32 bit, BIN
	component's ID	
D	Specify the pulse output port	Bit

t mo	module
ID	ID QD

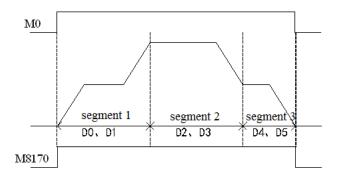
《16 bit instruction form》



《32 bit instruction form》



- The parameters' address is a section starts from **Dn** or **FDn**. In the above example (16bit instruction form): **D0** shows the first segment pulse's highest frequency; **D1** shows the first segment's pulse number; **D2** shows the second segment pulse's highest frequency; **D3** shows the second segment's pulse number , if the set value in **Dn**, **Dn+1** is 0, this represents the end of segment, the segment number is not limited.
- To 32 bit instruction DPLSR, D0, D1 set the first segment pulse's highest frequency; D2,
 D3 set the first segment's pulse number; D4, D5 set the second segment pulse's highest frequency; D6, D7 set the second segment's pulse number......
- Acceleration/deceleration time is the time from the start to the first segment's highest frequency. Meantime, it defines the slope of all segment's frequency to time. In this way the following acceleration/deceleration will perform according to this slope.
- Pulse can be output at only Y000 or Y001
- Frequency range: 0~400KHz;
- Pulse number range: 0~K32,767 (16 bits instruction) \(0~K2,147,483,647 \) (32 bits instruction)
- Acceleration/deceleration time : below 65535 ms



> Mode 2: segmented dual-directional pulse output PLSR

1: Instruction Summary Generate certain pulse quantity with the specified frequency, acceleration/deceleration time and pulse direction;

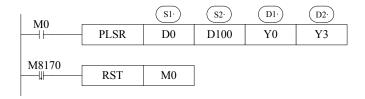
Segmented d	lual-directional pulse output [PL	SR]	
16 bits	PLSR	32 bits	DPLSR
Instruction		Instruction	
Execution	Normally ON/OFF coil	Suitable	VC2 VC2 VCE VCM
condition		Models	XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

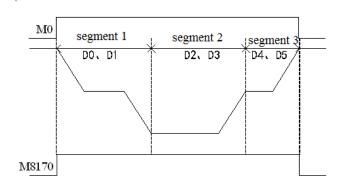
Operands	Function	Туре
S1	Specify the soft component's start ID of the segmented pulse parameters	16 bit/ 32 bit, BIN
S2	Specify acceleration/deceleration time or soft component's ID	16 bit/ 32 bit, BIN
D1	Specify the pulse output port	Bit
D2	Specify the pulse output direction's port	Bit

	2 doit doinp												
Word	operands					syste	n				constant	mod	dule
vvoid		D	FD	ED	ΤD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	D	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•							
l	S2	•	•		•	•					K		
Bit	operands				sys	stem							
		Х	Υ	М	S	Т	(0	Dn.m				
	D1		•										
	D2		•										
						·	•	•		•			

«16 bit instruction form»



- The parameters' address is a section starts from Dn or FDn. In the above example: D0 set the first segment pulse's highest frequency; D1 sshows the first segment's pulse number; D2 shows the second segment pulse's highest frequency; D3 shows the second segment's pulse number ,..... if the set value in Dn, Dn+1 is 0, this represents the end of segment, the number of segments available is not limited.
- Acceleration/deceleration time is the time from the start to the first segment's highest frequency. Meantime, it defines the slope of all segment's frequency to time. In this way the following acceleration/deceleration will perform according to this slope.
- Pulse can be output at only Y000 or Y001
- Y for Pulse direction can be specified freely. E.g.: if in S1 (the first segment) the pulse number is positive, Y output is ON; if the pulse number is negative, Y output is OFF; Note: in the first segment's pulse output, the pulse direction is only decided by the pulse number's nature (positive or negative) of the first segment.
- Frequency range: 0~400KHz;
- Pulse number range: 0~K32,767 (16 bits instruction), 0~K2,147,483,647 (32 bits instruction)
- Acceleration/deceleration time : below 65535 ms



6-2-4 Pulse Segment Switch [PLSNEXT]/[PLSNT]

1: Instruction Summary

Enter the next pulse output;

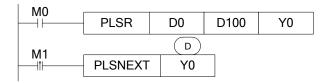
Pulse segme	nt switch [PLSNEXT]/[PLSNT]		
16 bits	PLSNEXT/PLSNT	32 bits	-
Instruction		Instruction	
Execution	Rising/falling edge	Suitable	XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM
condition		Models	XC2, XC3, XC5, XCW
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

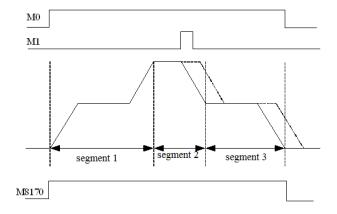
Operands	Function	Туре
D	Specify the pulse output port	Bit

Bit	operands				syste	m		
		Χ	Υ	М	S	Т	С	Dn.m
	D		•					
								•

《16 bit instruction form》



- If the pulse output reaches the highest frequency at the current segment, and output steadily at this frequency; when M1 changes from OFF to ON, then enter the next pulse output with the acceleration/deceleration time;
- Run the instruction within the acceleration/deceleration time is invalid;
- Instruction PLSNT is the brief of PLSNEXT, the functions are same;



-----(the dashed line represents the original pulse output

6-2-5 Pulse Stop [STOP]

1: Instruction Summary

Stop pulse output immediately;

Pulse stop [S	TOP]		
16 bits	STOP	32 bits	-
Instruction		Instruction	
Execution	Rising/falling edge	Suitable	VC2 VC2 VCE VCM
condition		Models	XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

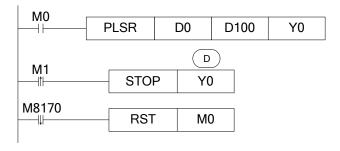
Operands	Function	Туре
D	Specify the port to stop pulse output	Bit

3: Suitable soft components

Bit	operands				syster	n		
		Χ	Υ	М	S	Т	С	Dn.m
	D		•					
			l	l			l	

Functions and Actions

《16 bit instruction form》



When M000 changes from OFF to be ON, PLSR output pulse at Y000. D0 specifies the frequency, D001 specifies the pulse number, D100 specifies the acceleration/deceleration time; when the output pulse number reaches the set value, stop outputting the pulse; on the rising edge of M001, STOP instruction stops outputting the pulse at Y000.

6-2-6 Refresh the pulse number at the port [PLSMV]

1: Instruction Summary

Refresh the pulse number at the port;

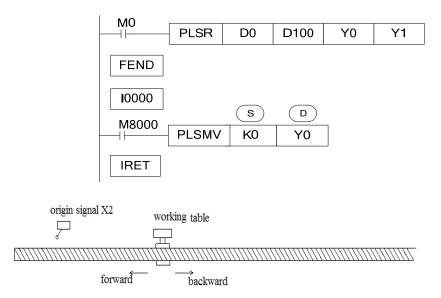
Refresh the p	oulse number at the port [PLSM	V]	
16 bits	-	32 bits	PLSMV
Instruction		Instruction	
Execution	Normally ON/OFF coil	Suitable	VC2 VC2 VCE VCM
condition		Models	XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Туре
S	Specify the pulse number or soft components' ID	32bit, BIN
D	Specify the port to refresh the pulse	Bit

Vord	operands	system constant								constant	module		
		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S	•	•		•	•					•		
		ı											
Bit	operands				sys	tem							
		Х	Υ	М	S	Т	С	1	Dn.m				
	D		•										

《32 bit instruction form》



- When the working table is moving backward, it gets the origin signal X2, executes
 the external interruption, PLSMV command run immediately, this is not effected by
 the scan cycle. Refresh the pulse number from Y0 and send to D8170.
- This instruction is used remove the accumulation difference caused in pulse control.

PLC Software Manual Page 227 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

6-2-7 Back to the Origin [ZRN]

1: Instruction Summary

Back to the Origin

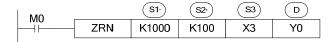
Back to the C	rigin [ZRN]		
16 bits	ZRN	32 bits	DZRN
Instruction		Instruction	
Execution	Normally ON/OFF coil	Suitable	VC2 VC2 VCE VCM
condition		Models	XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2: Operands

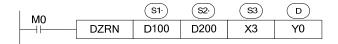
Operands	Function	Туре
S1	Specify the backward speed or soft components' ID	16/32bit, BIN
S2	Specify the creeping speed or soft components' ID	16/32 bit, BIN
S3	Specify the soft components' ID of the close point's signal	Bit
D	Specify the pulse output port	Bit

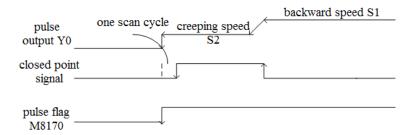
											1		
Word	operands					syster	n				constant	mod	dule
		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•					•		
	S2	•	•		•	•					•		
						,				•			
	operands		system										
Bit	-												
Bit		Х	Υ	М	S	Т	С	1	On.m				
Bit	S3	X •	Y	M •	S	Т	С	[On.m				

《16 bit instruction form》



《32 bit instruction form》





- Pulse output address: Y0 or Y1 only.
- S1 and S2 direction is same and the absolute value of S1 is greater than S2.
- After driving the instruction, move with the origin return speed S1.
- When the closed point signal turns from OFF to be ON, decrease the speed to be S2.
- When the closed point signal turns from ON to be OFF, write to registers (Y0:[D8171,D8170],Y1:[D8174,D8173]) when stopping pulse output.
- The decrease time can be specified by D8230~D8239; please refer to chapter 6-6 for details.

6-2-8 Relative position uni-segment pulse control [DRVI]

1:Instruction Summary

Relative position uni-segment pulse control;

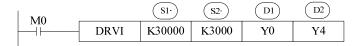
Relative posi	tion uni-segment pulse control [l	DRVI]	
16 bits	DRVI	32 bits	DDRVI
Instruction		Instruction	
Execution	Normally ON/OFF coil	Suitable	XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM
condition		Models	XC2, XC3, XC5, XCW
Hardware	-	Software	-
requirement		requirement	

2:Operands

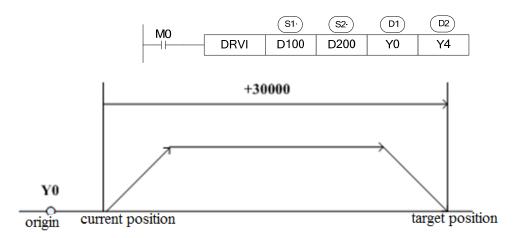
Operands	Function	Туре
S1	Specify the output pulse value or soft components ID	16/32bit, BIN
S2	Specify the output pulse frequency or soft components	16/32 bit, BIN
	ID	
D1	Specify the pulse output port	Bit
D2	Specify the pulse output direction port	Bit

J. Gailabic	e soit components												
	operands	system									constant	mod	dule
		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	D	QD
Word	S1	•	•		•	•					•		
	S2	•	•		•	•					•		
	operands				sys	tem							
D:t		Х	Υ	М	S	Т	С	; [On.m				
Bit	D1		•										
	D2		•										
								•	<u>.</u>				

《16 bit instruction form》



《32 bit instruction form》



- Pulse output ID: only Y0 or Y1.
- Pulse output direction can specify any Y.
- Acceleration/deceleration time is specified by D8230 (single word).
- The relative drive form means: move from the current position.

6-2-9 Absolute position uni-segment pulse control [DRVA]

1:Instruction Summary

Absolute position uni-segment pulse control

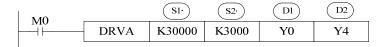
Absolute pos	Absolute position uni-segment pulse control [DRVA]								
16 bits	DRVA	32 bits	DDRVA						
Instruction		Instruction							
Execution	Normally ON/OFF coil	Suitable	VC2 VC2 VCE VCM						
condition		Models	XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM						
Hardware	-	Software	-						
requirement		requirement							

2: Operands

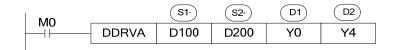
Operands	Function	Туре
S1	Specify the output pulse value or soft components ID	16/32bit, BIN
S2	Specify the output pulse frequency or soft components ID	16/32 bit, BIN
D1	Specify the pulse output port	Bit
D2	Specify the pulse output direction port	Bit

s. Suitable soit components													
Word	operands	system						constant	mod	dule			
		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•					•		
	S2	•	•		•	•					•		
			•	•	•	•	•	•		•			
Bit	operands				sys	tem							
		Х	Υ	М	S	Т	С	: [On.m				
	D1		•										
	D2		•										
			-			ı	·	L					

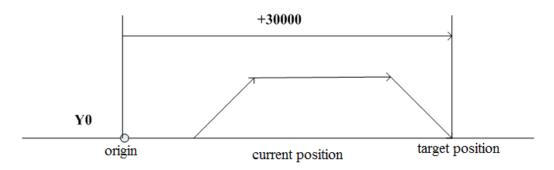
《16 bit instruction form》



《32 bit instruction form》



(Y0:[D8171,D8170],Y1:[D8174,D8173])



- Pulse output ID: only Y0 or Y1.
- Pulse output direction can specify any Y.
- Acceleration/deceleration time is specified by D8230 (single word).
- The relative drive form means: move from the origin position.
- Target position means S1, correspond with the following current value register as the absolute position.

6-2-10 Absolute position multi-segment pulse control [PLSA]

PLSA/DPLSA has two control modes, below we will introduce one by one;

> Mode 1: uni-directional pulse output PLSA

1: Instruction Summary

Generate absolute position segmented pulse with the specified frequency, acceleration/deceleration time and pulse direction;

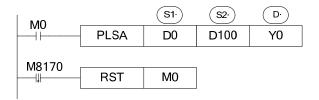
Absolute position multi-segment pulse control [PLSA]							
16 bits	PLSA	32 bits	DPLSA				
Instruction		Instruction					
Execution	Normally ON/OFF coil	Suitable	VO2 VO2 VOE VOM				
condition		Models	XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM				
Hardware	-	Software	-				
requirement		requirement					

2: Operands

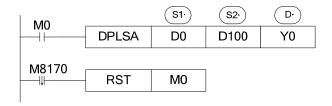
Operands	Function	Туре
S1	Specify the soft component's number to output the pulse parameters	16/32bit, BIN
S2	Specify the acceleration/deceleration time or soft component's number	16/32 bit, BIN
D	Specify the pulse output port	Bit

	operands					syste	m				constant	mod	dule
Word		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•							
	S2	•	•		•	•					K		
		1											
	operands				sys	tem							
Bit		Х	Υ	М	S	Т	(Dn.m				
	D1		•										
			•	•			· ·						

《16 bit instruction form》



《32 bit instruction form》



- The parameters' address is a section starts from **Dn** or **FDn**. In the above example: **D0** shows the first segment pulse's highest frequency; **D1** shows the first segment's absolute position; **D2** shows the second segment pulse's highest frequency; **D3** shows the second segment's absolute position ,...... if the set value in **Dn**, **Dn+1** is 0, this represents the end of segment. Up to a maximum of 24 segments can be set.
- Acceleration/deceleration time is the time from the start to the first segment's highest frequency. Meantime, it defines the slope of all segment's frequency to time. In this way the following acceleration/deceleration will perform according to this slope.
- Pulse can be output at only Y000 or Y001

Mode 2: dual-directional pulse output PLSA

1: Instruction Summary

Generate absolute position pulse with the specified frequency, acceleration/deceleration time and pulse direction;

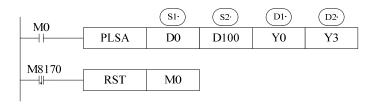
Absolute position multi-segment pulse control [PLSA]								
16 bits	PLSA	32 bits	DPLSA					
Instruction		Instruction						
Execution	Normally ON/OFF coil	Suitable	XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM					
condition		Models	AC2, AC3, AC5, ACIVI					
Hardware	-	Software	-					
requirement		requirement						

2: Operands

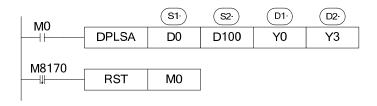
Operands	Function	Туре
S1	Specify the soft component's number to output the pulse parameters	16/32bit, BIN
S2	Specify the acceleration/deceleration time or soft component's number	16/32 bit, BIN
D1	Specify the pulse output port	Bit
D2	Specify the pulse direction port	Bit

Word	operands					syste	m				constant	mod	hule
vvoiu	орстаназ			l					1				-
		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•							
	S2	•	•		•	•					K		
Bit	operands				sys	tem							
		Х	Υ	М	S	Т	С	: [On.m				
	D1		•										
	D2		•										

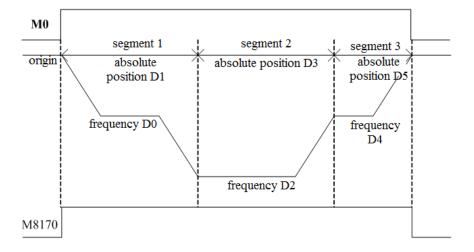
《16 bit instruction form》



《32 bit instruction form》

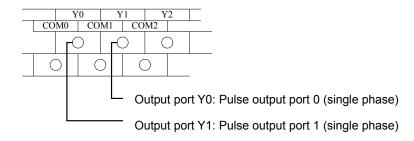


- The parameters' address is a section starts from **Dn** or **FDn**. In the above example: **D0** shows the first segment pulse's highest frequency; **D1** sshows the first segment's absolute position; **D2** shows the second segment pulse's highest frequency; **D3** shows the second segment's absolute position, if the set value in **Dn**, **Dn+1** is 0, this represents the end of segment. Up to a mximum of 24 segments can be set.
- Acceleration/deceleration time is the time from the start to the first segment's highest frequency. Meantime, it defines the slope of all segment's frequency to time. In this way the following acceleration/deceleration will perform according to this slope.
- Pulse can be output at only Y000 or Y001
- The Y port to output the pulse direction can be set freely;

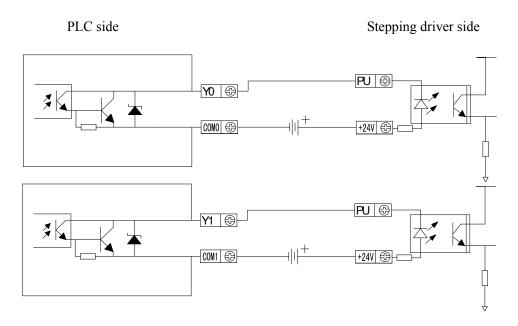




6-3 Output Wiring



Below is the graph to show the output terminals and stepping driver wiring:

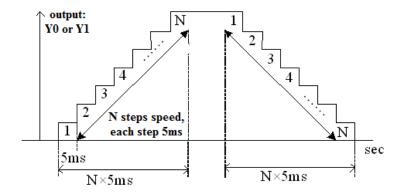


PLC Software Manual Page 238 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

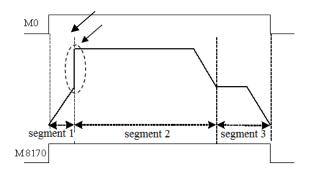


6-4 Items to Note

1: Concept of Step Frequency



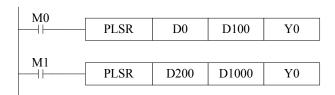
- During ACC/DEC, each step time is 5ms, this time is fixed and not changeable.
- The minimum step frequency (each step's rising/falling time) is 10Hz. If the frequency is lower than 10Hz, calculate as 10Hz; the maximum step frequency is 15Hz. If the frequency is larger than 15Hz, calculate as 15Hz.
- In case of frequency larger than 200Hz, please make sure each segment's pulse number no less than 10, if the set value is less than 10, send as 200Hz.



 When outputting the segmented pulse, if the current segment's pulse has been set out, while meantime it doesn't reach the highest frequency, then from the current segment to the next pulse output segment, pulse jump appears, see graph above;

3: Dual pulse output is invalid

- In one main program, users can't write two or more pulse output instructions with one output port Y;
- Therefore the sample below is wrong;



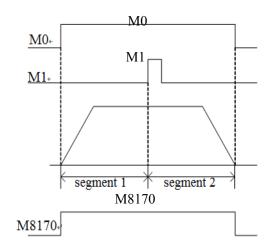
PLC Software Manual Page 239 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



6-5 Sample Programs

E.g.1: Stop at certain length

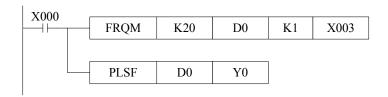
With instruction [PLSR] and [PLSNEXT], realize this "stop at certain length" function;



Take the sample program as the example, set two segments pulse output in D0, D1 and D2 , D3, with the same frequency value; In second segment pulse output, set pulse number D3 as the output pulse number after receive M1 signal. This will realize "stop at certain length" function. See graph on the left.

E.g.2: follow function

In this sample, the pulse frequency from Y0 equals with the frequency tested from X003. If the frequency tested from X003 changes, the pulse frequency from Y0 changes;



PLC Software Manual Page 240 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



6-6 Relative coils and registers of pulse output

Some flags of pulse output are listed below:

ID	Pulse ID	Function	Specification		
M8170	PULSE_1	"sending pulse" flag	Being ON when sending the pulse,		
M8171		overflow flag of "32 bits pulse sending"	When overflow, Flag is on		
M8172		Direction flag	1 is positive direction, the correspond direction port is on		
M8173	PULSE_2	"sending pulse" flag	Being ON when sending the pulse,		
M8174		overflow flag of "32 bits pulse sending"	When overflow, Flag is on		
M8175		Direction flag	1 is positive direction, the correspond direction port is on		
M8176	PULSE_3	"sending pulse" flag	Being ON when sending the pulse,		
M8177		overflow flag of "32 bits pulse sending"	When overflow, Flag is on		
M8178		Direction flag	1 is positive direction, the correspond direction port is on		
M8179	PULSE_4	"sending pulse" flag	Being ON when sending the pulse,		
M8180		overflow flag of "32 bits pulse sending"	When overflow, Flag is on		
M8181		Direction flag	1 is positive direction, the correspond direction port is on		
M8210	PULSE_1	Pulse alarm flag (frequency change suddenly)	1 is alarm, 0 is correct		
M8211		Neglect the alarm or not	When flag is 1, stop sending alarm		
M8212	PULSE_2	Pulse alarm flag (frequency change suddenly)	1 is alarm, 0 is correct		
M8213		Neglect the alarm or not	When flag is 1, stop sending alarm		
M8214	PULSE_3	Pulse alarm flag (frequency change suddenly)	1 is alarm, 0 is correct		
M8215		Neglect the alarm or not	When flag is 1, stop sending alarm		
M8216	PULSE_4	Pulse alarm flag (frequency change suddenly)	1 is alarm, 0 is correct		
M8217		Neglect the alarm or not	When flag is 1, stop sending alarm		
M8218	PULSE_5	Pulse alarm flag (frequency change suddenly)	1 is alarm, 0 is correct		
M8219		Neglect the alarm or not	When flag is 1, stop sending alarm		

Some special registers of pulse output are listed below:

PLC Software Manual Page 241 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

ID	Pulse ID	Function	Specification
D8170	PULSE_1	The low 16 bits of accumulated pulse number	
D8171		The high 16 bits of accumulated pulse number	
D8172		The current segment (means Nr.n segment)	
D8173	PULSE_2	The low 16 bits of accumulated pulse number	
D8174		The high 16 bits of accumulated pulse number	
D8175		The current segment (means Nr.n segment)	
D8176	PULSE_3	The low 16 bits of accumulated pulse number	
D8177		The high 16 bits of accumulated pulse number	
D8178		The current segment (means Nr.n segment)	
D8179	PULSE_4	The low 16 bits of accumulated pulse number	
D8180		The high 16 bits of accumulated pulse number	
D8181		The current segment (means Nr.n segment)	
D8190	PULSE_1	The low 16 bits of the current accumulated current pulse number	
D8191		The high 16 bits of the current accumulated current pulse number	
D8192	PULSE_2	The low 16 bits of the current accumulated current pulse number	
D8193		The high 16 bits of the current accumulated current pulse number	
D8194	PULSE_3	The low 16 bits of the current accumulated current pulse number	
D8195		The high 16 bits of the current accumulated current pulse number	Only XC5-32RT-E
D8196	PULSE_4	The low 16 bits of the current accumulated current pulse number	(4PLS) model has
D8197		The high 16 bits of the current accumulated current pulse number	
D8210	PULSE_1	The error pulse segment's position	
D8212	PULSE_2	The error pulse segment's position	
D8214	PULSE_3	The error pulse segment's position	
D8216	PULSE_4	The error pulse segment's position	
D8218	PULSE_5	The error pulse segment's position	

Absolute position/relative position/back to origin;

ID	Pulse	Function	Description
D8230	PULSE_1	Rising time of the absolute/relation position instruction (Y0)	
D8231		Falling time of the origin return instruction (Y0)	
D8232	PULSE_2	Rising time of the absolute/relation position instruction (Y1)	
D8233		Falling time of the origin return instruction (Y1)	
D8234	PULSE_3	Rising time of the absolute/relation position instruction (Y2)	
D8235		Falling time of the origin return instruction (Y2)	
D8236	PULSE_4	Rising time of the absolute/relation position instruction (Y3)	
D8237		Falling time of the origin return instruction (Y3)	
D8238	PULSE_5	Rising time of the absolute/relation position instruction	
D8239		Falling time of the origin return instruction	

7Communication Function

This chapter includes: basic concepts of communication, Modbus communication, free communication and CAN-bus communication;

7-1 . Summary
7-2 . Modbus Communication
7-2 . Modbus Communication
7-3 . Free Communication
7-4 . CAN Communication

Relative Instructions:

Mnemonic	Function	Circuit and Soft Components	Chapter			
MODBUS C	MODBUS Communication					
COLR	Coil Read	COLR S1 S2 S3 D1 D2	7-2-3			
INPR	Input coil read	INPR S1 S2 S3 D1 D2	7-2-3			
COLW	Single coil write	COLW D1 D2 S1 S2	7-2-3			
MCLW	Multi-coil write	MCLW D1 D2 D3 S1 S2	7-2-3			
REGR	Register read	REGR S1 S2 S3 D1 D2	7-2-3			
INRR	Input register read	INRR S1 S2 S3 D1 D2	7-2-3			
REGW	Single register write	REGW D1 D2 S1 S2	7-2-3			
MRGW	Multi-register write	MRGW D1 D2 D3 S1 S2	7-2-3			
Free Comm	unication					
SEND	Send data	SEND S1 S2 n	7-3-2			
RCV	Receive data	eceive data				
CAN-bus Communication						
CCOLR	Read coil	CCOLR S1 S2 S3 D	7-4-4			
CCOLW	Write coil	CCOLW D1 D2 D3 S	7-4-4			
CREGR	Read register	CREGR S1 S2 S3 D	7-4-4			
CREGW	Write register	CREGW D1 D2 D3 S	7-4-4			

3

7-1 Summary

XC2-PLC, XC3-PLC, XC5-PLC main units can fulfill your requirements for communication and networking. They not only support simple networks (Modbus protocol, Free Communication protocol), but also support complicated networks.

XC2-PLC, XC3-PLC, XC5-PLC offer communication accessthat enables communication with peripheral devices (such as printers, instruments etc.) that have their own communication protocol.

XC2-PLC, XC3-PLC, XC5-PLC all support Modbus protocol and Free protocol however, the XC5-PLC also supports CAN-Bus functions.

7-1-1 COM Port

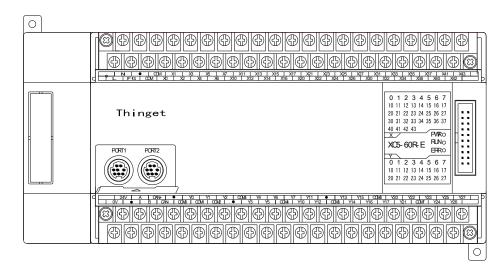
COM Port

There are 2 COM ports (Port1、Port2) on XC3 Series PLC basic units, while there are 3 COM ports on XC5 Series PLC main units. In addition to the same COM ports (COM1、COM2), they have also CAN COM port.

COM 1 (Port1) is the program port, it can be used to download the program and connect with the other devices. The parameters (baud rate, data bit etc.) of this COM port are fixed, can't be re-set.

COM 2 (Port2) is communication port, it can be used to download a program and connect with the other devices. The parameters (baud rate, data bit etc.) of this COM port <u>can</u> be re-set via software.

Via BD cards, XC Series PLCs can accommodate other COM ports. These COM ports can be RS232 and RS485.



PLC Software Manual Page 246 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

1: RS232 COM Port



2: RS485 COM port:

For the RS485 COM port, A is "+" signal, B is "-" signal.

The A, B terminals (RS485) on XC Series PLCs come from COM2, so, you cannot connect a device to the COM2 plug socket and also to the A & B terminals.

3: CAN COM port:

CAN port can be used to realize CAN-Bus communication. The pin terminals are "CAN+", "CAN-"

For the detailed CAN communication functions, please refer to "6-8 . CAN-Bus function (XC5 series)" $^{\circ}$

PLC Software Manual Page 247 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

7-1-2 Communication Parameters

Communication Parameters

Station	Modbus Station number: 1~254、255 (FF) is free format communication
Baud Rate	300bps~115.2Kbps
Data Bit	8 bits data、7 bits data
Stop Bit	2 stop bits、1 stop bit
Parity	Even、Odd、No check

The default parameters of COM 1:

Station number is 1, baud rate is 19200bps, 8 data bit, 1 stop bit, Even

Parameters Setting

Set the parameters with the COM ports on XC series PLC;

	Number	Function	Description
	FD8210	Communication mode	255 is free format , 1~254 bit is Modbus station number
	FD8211	Communication format	Baud rate, data bit, stop bit, parity
	FD8212	ASC timeout judgment time	Unit: ms , if set to be 0, it means no timeout waiting
COM 1	FD8213	Reply timeout judgment time	Unit: ms , if set to be 0, it means no timeout waiting
	FD8214	Start symbol	High 8 bits invalid
	FD8215	End symbol	High 8 bits invalid
	FD8216	Free format setting	8/16 bits cushion, with/without start bit, with/without stop bit

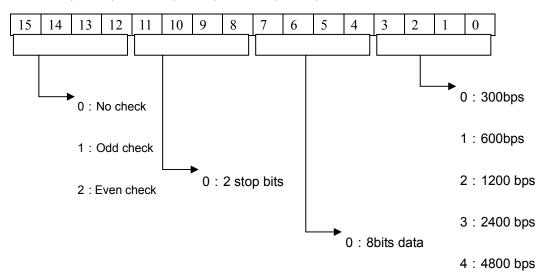
	FD8220	Communication mode	255 is free format , 1~254 bit is Modbus station number
	FD8221	Communication format	Baud rate, data bit, stop bit, parity
	FD8222	ASC timeout judgment time	Unit: ms , if set to be 0, it means no timeout
COM 2			waiting
	FD8223	Reply timeout judgment time	Unit: ms , if set to be 0, it means no timeout
			waiting
	FD8224	Start symbol	High 8 bits invalid
	FD8225	End symbol	High 8 bits invalid
		Free format setting	8/16 bits cushion,
	FD8226		with/without start bit,
			with/without stop bit
	FD8230	Communication mode	255 is free format ,
			1~254 bit is Modbus station number
	FD8231	Communication format	Baud rate, data bit, stop bit, parity
	FD8232	ASC timeout judgment time	Unit: ms , if set to be 0, it means no timeout
			waiting
COM 3	FD8233 Reply timeout judgment time		Unit: ms , if set to be 0, it means no timeout
			waiting
	FD8234	Start symbol	High 8 bits invalid
	FD8235	End symbol	High 8 bits invalid
	FD8236		8/16 bits cushion,
		Free format setting	with/without start bit,
			with/without stop bit

^{※1:} The PLC will be offline after changing the communication parameters, use "stop when reboot" function to keep PLC online.

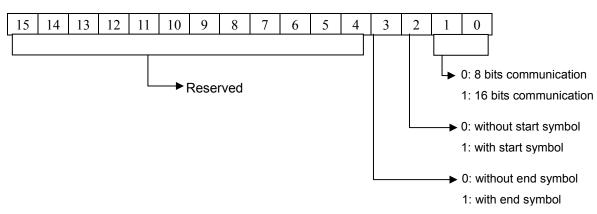
^{%2}: After modifying the data with special FLASH data registers, the new data will come into effect after reboot.

Set Communication Parameters

FD8211 (COM1)/FD8221 (COM2)/FD8231 (COM3)



FD8216 (COM1)/FD8226 (COM2)/FD8236 (COM3)





7-2 Modbus Communication

7-2-1 Function

XC Series PLCs support both Modbus master and Modbus slave.

MASTER FORMAT: When PLC is set to be master, PLC sends request to other slave devices via Modbus instructions, other devices respond to the master unit.

SLAVE FORMAT: when PLC is set to be slave, it can only communicate with master devices.

The default status of XC-PLC is Modbus slave.

7-2-2 Address

For the soft component's number in PLC which corresponds with Modbus address number, please see the following table:

Coil Space: (Modbus ID prefix is "0x")

Bit ID	ModbusID	Modbus ID
	(decimal K)	(Hex. H)
M0~M7999	0~7999	0~1F3F
X0~X1037	16384~16927	4000~421F
Y0~Y1037	18432~18975	4800~4A1F
S0~S1023	20480~21503	5000~53FF
M8000~M8511	24576~25087	6000~61FF
T0~T618	25600~26218	6400~666A
C0~C634	27648~28282	6C00~6E7A

Register Space: (Modbus ID prefix is "4x")

Word ID	ModbusID	Modbus ID
	(decimal K)	(Hex. H)
D0~D7999	0~7999	0~1F3F
TD0~TD618	12288~12906	3000~326A
CD0~CD634	14336~14970	3800~3A7A
D8000~D8511	16384~16895	4000~41FF
FD0~FD5000	18432~23432	4800~5B88
FD8000~FD8511	26624~27135	6800~69FF

 $\slash\hspace{-0.5em} X1:$ Bit soft components X. Y are in Octal form, the left are in decimal form.

PLC Software Manual Page 251 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

7-2-3 Communication Instructions

Modbus instructions include coil read/write, register read/write; below, we describe these instructions in details:

➢ Coil Read [COLR]

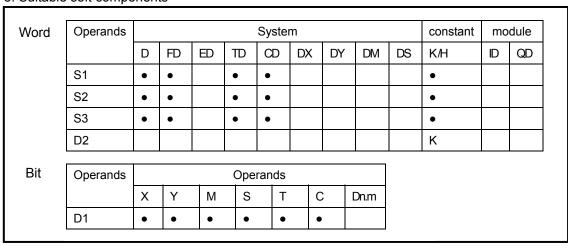
1: Instruction Summary

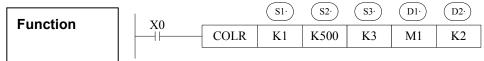
Read the specified station's specified coil status to the local PLC;

Coil read [COLR]				
16 bits	COLR	32 bits	-	
instruction		instruction		
Execution	Normally ON/OFF coil	Suitable	VC2 VC2 VCE VCM	
Condition		Models	XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM	
Hardware	-	Software	-	
Requirement		Requirement		

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Туре
S1	Specify the remote communication station or soft component's	16bits, BIN
	ID	
S2	Specify the remote coil's start ID or soft component's ID	16bits, BIN
S3	Specify the coil number or soft component's ID	16bits, BIN
D1	Specify the start ID of the local receive coils	bit
D2	Specify the serial port's number	16bits, BIN





- Read coil instruction, Modbus code is 01H。
- Serial Port: K1~K3
- Input Coil Read [INPR]

1: Instruction

Read the specified station's specified input coils into local coils:

Input coil read	Input coil read [INPR]									
16 bits	INPR	32 bits instruction	-							
instruction										
Execution	Normally ON/OFF riging adda	Suitable Models	VC2 VC2 VCE VCM							
Condition	Normally ON/OFF、rising edge		XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM							
Hardware	-	Software	-							
Requirement		Requirement								

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Туре
S1	Specify the remote communication station or soft component's ID	16bits, BIN
S2	Specify the remote coil's start ID or soft component's ID	16bits, BIN
S3	Specify the coil number or soft component's ID	16bits, BIN
D1	Specify the start ID of the local receive coils	bit
D2	Specify the serial port's number	16bits, BIN

3: Suitable Soft Components

5. Suitable Soft Components													
Word	Operands		System								constant	mc	dule
		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•					•		
	S2	•	•		•	•					•		
	S3	•	•		•	•					•		
	D2										K		
Bit	Operands				Sys	stem							
		Χ	Υ	М	S	Т	(Dn.m				
	D1	•	•	•	•	•		•					
			•		•	•			•				



- Instruction to read the input coil, Modbus code is 02H
- Serial port: K1~K3
- When X0 is ON, execute COLR or INPR instruction, set communication flag after execution of the instruction; when X0 is OFF, no operation. If error happens during communication, it resends automatically. If 3 errors are noted, the communication error flag will be set. The user can check the relative registers to judge the error.

Single Coil Write [COLW]

1: Summary

Write the local coil status to the specified station's specified coil;

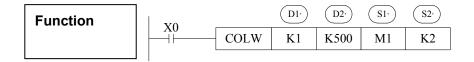
Single coil writ	Single coil write [COLW]									
16 bits	COLW	32 bits	-							
instruction		instruction								
Execution	Normally ON/OFF、rising edge	Suitable	XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM							
Condition	Normally ON/OFF, Tising edge	Models	AUZ, AU3, AU5, AUW							
Hardware	-	Software	-							
Requirement		Requirement								

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Туре
D1	Specify the remote communication station or soft component's ID	16bits, BIN
D2	Specify the remote coil's start ID or soft component's ID	16bits, BIN
S1	Specify the start ID of the local receive coils	bit
S2	Specify the serial port's number	16bits, BIN

3: Suitable soft components

5. Sultable soil components													
Word	Operands System										constant		dule
11014		D							DS	K/H	ID	QD	
	D1 • • •								•				
	D2	•	•		•	•					•		
	S2										K		
Bit	Operands				Sys	stem							
		Х	Υ	М	S	Т	(С	Dn.m				
	S1	•	•	•	•	•		•					
					<u> </u>	•		•					



- Write the single coil, Modbus code is 05H
- Serial port: K1~K3

> Multi-coil Write [MCLW]

1:Summary

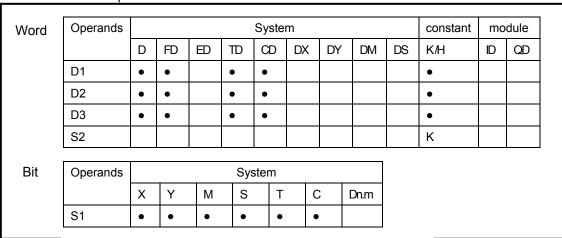
Write the local multi-coil status into the specified station's specified coil;

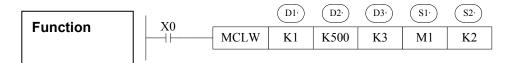
Multi-coil write	Multi-coil write [MCLW]									
16 bits	MCLW	32 bits instruction	-							
instruction										
Execution	Normally ON/OFF riging odge	Suitable Models	VC2 VC2 VCE VCM							
Condition	Normally ON/OFF、rising edge		XC2, XC3, XC5, XCM							
Hardware	-	Software	-							
Requirement		Requirement								

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Туре
D1	Specify the remote communication station or soft component's	16bits, BIN
	ID	
D2	Specify the remote coil's start ID or soft component's ID	16bits, BIN
D3	Specify the coil number or soft component's ID	16bits, BIN
S1	Specify the start ID of the local receive coils	bit
S2	Specify the serial port's number	16bits, BIN

3: Suitable soft components





- Instruction to write the multiply coils, Modbus code is 0FH
- Serial port: K1~K3
- When X0 is ON, execute COLW or MCLW instruction, set communication flag after execution the instruction; when X0 is OFF, no operation. If error happens during communication, it resends automatically. If 4 errors are noted, the communication error flag will be set. The user can check the relative registers to judge the error.

> Register Read [REGR]

1: Summary

Read the specified station's specified register to the local register;

Register read	Register read [REGR]									
16 bits	REGR	32 bits	-							
instruction		instruction								
Execution	Name ally ONIOFF rising adap	Suitable	XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM							
Condition	Normally ON/OFF、rising edge	Models	XUZ, XU3, XU3, XUNI							
Hardware	-	Software	-							
Requirement		Requirement								

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Туре
S1	Specify the remote communication station or soft component's ID	16bits, BIN
S2	Specify the remote coil's start ID or soft component's ID	16bits, BIN
S3	Specify the coil number or soft component's ID	16bits, BIN
D1	Specify the start ID of the local receive coils	bit
D2	Specify the serial port's number	16bits, BIN

3: Suitable soft components

Word	Operands		System									module	
vvoiu		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•					•		
	S2	•	•		•	•					•		
	S3	•	•		•	•					•		
	D1	•											
	D2										K		



- Instruction to read the REGISTERS, Modbus code is 03H
- Serial port: K1~K3

> Register Input Read [INNR]

1: Summary

Read the specified station's specified input register to the local register

Read Input Re	Read Input Register [INRR]									
16 bits	INRR	32 bits	-							
instruction		instruction								
Execution	Normally ON/OFF、rising edge	Suitable	XC2、XC3、XC5、XCN							
Condition	Normally ON/OFF, Tising edge	Models	AUZ, AU3, AU5, AUNI							
Hardware	-	Software	-							
Requirement		Requirement								

2:Operands

Operands	Function	Туре
S1	Specify the remote communication station or soft component's ID	16bits, BIN
S2	Specify the remote coil's start ID or soft component's ID	16bits, BIN
S3	Specify the coil number or soft component's ID	16bits, BIN
D1	Specify the start ID of the local receive coils	bit
D2	Specify the serial port's number	16bits, BIN

3: Suitable soft components

Word	Operands	Operands System							System								
		D	FD	ED	ΤD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD				
	S1	•	•		•	•					•						
	S2	•	•		•	•					•						
	S3	•	•		•	•					•						
	D1	•															
	D2										К						
	<u>, </u>	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•				



- Instruction to read the input registers, Modbus code is 04H
- Serial port: K1~K3
- When X0 is ON, execute REGR or INRR instruction, set communication flag after execution the instruction; when X0 is OFF, no operation. If error happens during communication, it resends automatically. If 4 errors are noted, the communication error flag will be set. The user can check the relative registers to judge the error.

Single Register Write [REGW]

1: Summary

Instruction to write the local specified register into the specified station's specified register;

Single register	Single register write [REGW]								
16 bits	REGW	32 bits	-						
instruction		instruction							
Execution	Normally ON/OFF、rising edge	Suitable	XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM						
Condition	Normally ON/OFF, Tising edge	Models	AUZ, AU3, AU5, AUNI						
Hardware	-	Software	-						
Requirement		Requirement							

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Туре
D1	Specify the remote communication station or soft	16bits, BIN
	component's ID	
D2	Specify the remote coil's start ID or soft	16bits, BIN
	component's ID	
S1	Specify the start ID of the local receive coils	16bits, BIN
S2	Specify the serial port's number	16bits, BIN

3: Suitable soft components

Word	Operands						constant	mo	dule				
		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	D1	•	•		•	•					•		
	D2	•	•		•	•					•		
	S1	•											
	S2										K		



- Write the single register, Modbus code is 06H
- Serial port: K1~K3

Multi-register write [MRGW]

1:Summary

Instruction to write the local specified register to the specified station's specified register;

Multi-register v	write [MRGW]		
16 bits	MRGW	32 bits	-
instruction		instruction	
Execution	Normally ON/OFF vising	Suitable	VC2 VC2 VCE VCM
Condition	Normally ON/OFF , rising	Models	XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM
	edge		
Hardware	-	Software	-
Requirement		Requirement	

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Туре
D1	Specify the remote communication station or soft	16bits, BIN
	component's ID	
D2	Specify the remote coil's start ID or soft	16bits, BIN
	component's ID	
D3	Specify the coil number or soft component's ID	16bits, BIN
S1	Specify the start ID of the local receive coils	bit
S2	Specify the serial port's number	16bits, BIN

3: Suitable soft components

Word	Operands		System								constant	mo	dule
		D	FD	ED	ΤD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	D1	•	•		•	•					•		
	D2	•	•		•	•					•		
	S1	•											
	S2										K		



- Instruction to write the multiply registers, Modbus code is 10H
- Serial port: K1~K3

When X0 is ON, execute REGW or MRGW instruction, set communication flag after execution the instruction; when X0 is OFF, no operation. If error happens during communication, it resends automatically. If 4 errors are noted, the communication error flag will be set. The user can check the relative registers to judge the error.



7-3 Free Format Communication

7-3-1 Communication Mode

Free format communication transfer data in the form of data block, each block can transfer a maximum of 128 bytes. Each block can set a start symbol and stop symbol, or not set.

Communication Mode:

Start Symbol (1 byte)	Data Block (max. 128 bytes)	End Symbol (1 byte)
-----------------------	-----------------------------	---------------------

Port1, Port2 or Port3 can realize free format communication

• Under free format form, FD8220 or FD8230 should set to be 255 (FF)

Baud Rate: 300bps~115.2Kbps

Data Format

Data Bit: 7bits、8bits

Parity: Odd, Even, No Check

Stop bit: 1 bit,2 bits Start Symbol: 1 bit Stop Symbol: 1 bit

User can set a start/stop symbol, after set the start/stop symbol, PLC will automatically add this start/stop symbol when sending data; remove this start/stop symbol when receiving data.

Communication Format: 8 bits,16 bits

If utilizing 8 bits buffer format to communicate, within the communication process, the high bytes are invalid, PLCs only use the low bytes to send and receive data.

If utilizing 16 bits buffer format to communicate, when PLC is sending data, PLC will send low bytes before sending higher bytes

PLC Software Manual Page 260 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

7-3-2 Instruction Form

Send Data [SEND]

1: Summary

Write the local specified data to the specified station's specified ID;

Send data [SE	END]		
16 bits	SEND	32 bits	-
instruction		instruction	
Execution	Normally ON/OFF vising	Suitable	VC2 VC2 VCE VCM
Condition	Normally ON/OFF , rising	Models	XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM
	edge		
Hardware	-	Software	-
Requirement		Requirement	

2: Operands

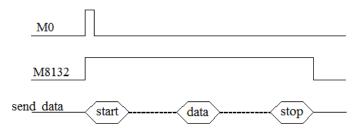
Operands	Function	Туре
S1	Specify the start ID of local PLC	16bits, BIN
S2	Specify the ASC number to send or soft component's ID	16bits, BIN
n	Specify the COM port Nr.	16bits, BIN

3: Suitable soft components

Word	Operands		System								constant	mo	dule
		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•							
	S2	•	•		•	•					•		
	n	•									K		



- Data send instruction, send data on the rising edge of M0;
- Serial port: K2~K3
- When sending data, set "sending" flag M8132 (COM2) ON



Receive Data [RCV]

1: Summary

Write the specified station's data to the local specified ID;

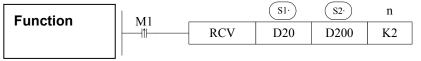
Receive data	[RCV]		
16 bits	RCV	32 bits	-
instruction		instruction	
Execution	Normally ON/OFF rising	Suitable	VC2 VC2 VCE VCM
Condition	Normally ON/OFF , rising	Models	XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM
	edge		
Hardware	-	Software	-
Requirement		Requirement	

2: Operands

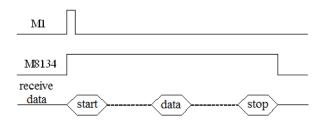
Operands	Function	Туре
S1	Specify the start ID of local PLC	16bits, BIN
S2	Specify the ASC number to receive or soft component's ID	16bits, BIN
n	Specify the COM port Nr.	16bits, BIN

3: Suitable soft components

Word	Operands					Syste	m				constant	mo	dule
		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•							
	S2	•	•		•	•					•		
	n										•		



- Data receive instruction, receive data on the rising edge of M0;
- Serial port: K2~K3
- When receiving data, set "receiving" flag M8134(COM2) ON



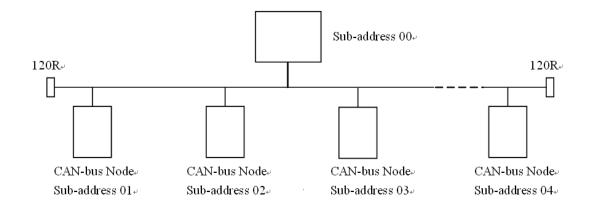
%1: If you require PLC to receive but not send, or receive before send, you need to set the communication timeout as 0ms



7-4 CAN-Bus Format

7-4-1 Brief Introduction of CAN-Bus

XC5 Series PLCs support CAN-Bus functions. Below we will give some basic concept on CAN-Bus:



CAN (Controller Area Network) belongs to the industrial area bus category. Compared with common communication bus, CAN-Bus data communication has performance of outstanding dependability, real time ability and flexibility.

CAN controller works under multi-master format. In the network, each node can send data to the bus according to the bus visit priority. These characters enable each node in the CAN-Bus network to have stronger data communication real time performance, and easy to construct a redundant structure, improving the system's dependability and flexibility.

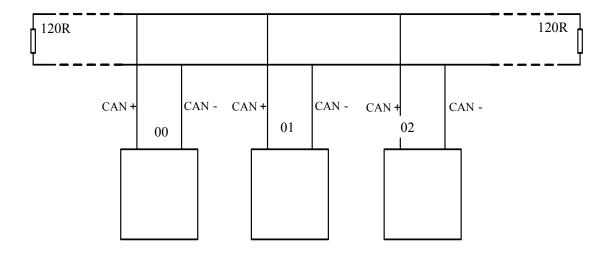
In CAN-Bus networks, any node can initiatively send message at any time to any other node, no master and no slave. Enabling flexible communication; it's easy to compose multi-device backup system, distributing format monitor, control system. To fulfill different real time requirements, the nodes can be divided to be different priority levels. With non-destroy bus arbitrament technology, when two nodes send message to the network at the same time, the low level priority node intuitively stops data sending, while high level priority node can continue transferring data without any influence. This gives functions of node to node, node to multi-node, bureau broadcasting sending/receiving data. Each frame's valid byte number is 8, so the transfer time is short, the probability ratio is low.

PLC Software Manual Page 263 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

7-4-2 External Wiring

CAN-Bus Communication Port: CAN + 、CAN -

The wiring among each node of CAN-Bus is shown in the following graph; at the two ends, add 120 ohm middle-terminal resistors.



7-4-3 CAN-Bus Network Form

There are two forms of CAN-Bus network: one is instructions communication format; the other is internal protocol communication format. These two forms can work at the same time

> Instructions communication format

This format means, in the local PLC program, via CAN-Bus instructions, execute bit or word reading/writing with the specified remote PLC.

> Internal protocol communication format

This format means, via setting of special register, via configure table format, realize allude with each other among PLC's certain soft component's space. In this way, realize PLC source sharing in CAN-Bus network.

7-4-4 CAN-Bus Instructions

PLC Software Manual Page 264 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

Read Coil [CCOLR]

1:Instruction Description

Function: Read the specified station's specified coil status into the local specified coil.

Read Coil [CC	OLR]		
16 bits	CCOLR	32 bits	-
instruction		instruction	
Execution	Normally ON/OFF, rising	Suitable	XC5
Condition	edge activates	Models	
Hardware	-	Software	-
Requirement		Requirement	

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Туре
S1	Specify remote communication station ID or soft component's	16bits, BIN
	number;	
S2	Specify the remote coil's start ID or soft component's number;	16bits, BIN
S3	Specify the coil number or soft component's number;	16bits, BIN
D	Specify the local receive coil's start ID	bit

3: Suitable Soft Components

Word	Operands	System									Constant	Мо	dule
		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•					•		
	S2	•	•		•	•					•		
	S3	•	•		•	•					•		
Bit													
	Operands				Sy	stem							
		Х	Υ	М	S	Т	(0	Dn.m				



 Execute CCOLR instruction when X0 changes from OFF to ON; read the four coils data of remote station at address 2, coil's start ID K20 to local M20 ~ M23.

> Write the Coil [CCOLW]

1: Summary

Write the local specified multi-coils status into the specified station's specified coils;

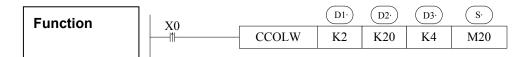
Write the coil	[CCOLW]		
16 bits	CCOLW	32 bits	-
instruction		instruction	
Execution	Normally ON/OFF vising	Suitable	XC5
Condition	Normally ON/OFF , rising	Models	
	edge		
Hardware	-	Software	-
Requirement		Requirement	

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Туре
D1	Specify remote communication station ID or soft	16 BIN
	component's number;	
D2	Specify the remote coil's start ID or soft	16 BIN
	component's number;	
D3	Specify the coil number or soft component's	16 BIN
	number;	
S	Specify the local receive coil's start ID	Position

3: Suitable soft components

Word	Operands					constant	mo	dule					
		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•					•		
	S2	•	•		•	•					•		
	S3	•	•		•	•					•		
Bit	Operands		System										
		Χ	Υ	М	S	Т	(С	Dn.m				
	D	•	•	•	•	•	•	•					



Execute CCOLW instruction when X0 changes from OFF to ON; write the local M20 ~
 M23 to the remote station 20th, coil's start ID K20.

> Read Register [CREGR]

1: Summary

Read the specified station's specified register to the local specified register;

Read register	[CREGR]		
16 bits	CREGR	32 bits instruction	-
instruction			
Execution	Normally ON/OFF riging odgs	Suitable Models	XC5
Condition	Normally ON/OFF、rising edge		
Hardware	-	Software	-
Requirement		Requirement	

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Туре
D1	Specify remote communication station ID or soft component's number;	16bits, BIN
D2	Specify the remote register's start ID or soft component's number;	16bits, BIN
D3	Specify the register number or soft component's number;	16bits, BIN
S	Specify the local receive coil's start ID	16bits, BIN

3: Suitable soft components

Word	Operands					Syste	m				constant	mo	dule
vvora		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•					•		
	S2	•	•		•	•					•		
	S3	•	•		•	•					•		
	D	•			•	•							



Execute CREGR instruction when X0 changes from OFF to ON; read the remote station
 2th, coil's start ID K20 to the local D20 ~ D23

> Write the Register [CREGW]

1: Summary

Write the specified local input register to the specified station's specified register;

Write the regis	ster [CREGW]		
16 bits	CREGW	32 bits	-
instruction		instruction	
Execution	Normally ON/OFF riging odge	Suitable	XC5
Condition	Normally ON/OFF、rising edge	Models	
Hardware	-	Software	-
Requirement		Requirement	

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Туре
D1	Specify remote communication station ID or soft component's number;	16bits, BIN
D2	Specify the remote register's start ID or soft component's number;	16bits, BIN
D3	Specify the register number or soft component's number;	16bits, BIN
S	Specify the local receive coil's start ID	16bits, BIN

3: Suitable soft components

Word	Operands				constant	mo	dule						
vvoid		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•					•		
	S2	•	•		•	•					•		
	S3	•	•		•	•					•		
	D	•			•	•							



Execute CREGW instruction when X0 changes from OFF to ON; write the local D20 ~
 D23 to the remote station 2th, coil's start ID K20.

7-4-5 Communication Form of Internal Protocol

Function	

Open/close the internal protocol communication function
 Set the value in register FD8350:

0: do not use CAN internal protocol communication;

1: use CAN internal protocol communication

CAN internal protocol communication is default to be closed

Set the communication parameters

See the setting methods with baud rate, station number, sending frequency etc. in the below table:

Define the configure items:

Internal protocol communication is to communicate via setting the configure items;

The configure items include: read the bit, read the word, write the bit, write the word;

The configure form:

Step 1: add the four configure items numbers separately: FD8360—read the bit items; FD8361—read the word items; FD8362—write the bit items; FD8363—write the word items.

Step 2: set each configure item's communication object, each item includes four parameters: remote node's station; remote node's object ID; local object's ID; number; the corresponding register ID is: FD8370~FD8373 represents Nr.1 item; FD8374~FD8377 represents Nr.2 item,FD9390~FD9393 represents Nr.256 item. A maximum of 256 items can be set;

see tables below:

Communication Setting

Nr.	Function	Description
FD8350	CAN communication mode	0 represents not use ; 1 represents internal protocol

FD8351	CAN baud rate	See CAN baud rate setting table
FD8352	Self CAN station	For CAN protocol use (the default value is 1)
FD8354	Configured sending frequency	The set value's unit is ms , represents "send every ms " if set to be 0, it means send every cycle, the default value is 5ms
FD8360	Read bit number	
FD8361	Read word number	
FD8362	write bit number	-
FD8363	write word number	
FD8370	Remote node's ID	
FD8371	Remote node's object ID	The Nr 1 item's configuration
FD8372	Local object's ID	The Nr.1 item's configuration
FD8373	Number	
FD9390	Remote node's ID	
FD9391	Remote node's object ID	The Nr 256 item's configuration
FD9392	Local object's ID	The Nr.256 item's configuration
FD9393	Number	
•	•	

Status Flag

M8240	CAN self check	Set 1 if error; set 0 if		
1010240	error flag	correct		
M8241	Error flag of CAN	Set 1 if error; set 0 if		
1010241	configure	correct		
		If set to be 1, then		
		recover after error		
		happens;		

Baud Rate Setting

FD8351 Baud Rate (BPS) 0 1K 1 2K 2 5K 3 10K		
value Rate (BPS) 0 1K 1 2K 2 5K	ED0251	Baud
(BPS) 0 1K 1 2K 2 5K		Rate
1 2K 2 5K	value	(BPS)
2 5K	0	1K
	1	2K
3 10K	2	5K
	3	10K

Register Status

		0: no error 2: initialize error					
D8240	CAN error information	30: bus error					
		31: error alarm					
		32: data overflow					
D8241	The configure item's Nr. which has error	Show the first number of error					
D0241	The configure item's Nr. Which has end	configure item					
D8242	Data package number sent every second	-					
D8243	Data package number received every						
D0243	second	-					
D8244	CAN communication error count	-					

7-4-6 CAN Free Format Communication

CAN Sending [CSEND]

1: Instructions Summary

Write the specified data from the unit to a specified address (data transfer in one unit)

CAN Sending [CSEND]

16bits	CSEND	32bits	-
instruction		instruction	
Executing	Normally ON/OFF Biging adds	Suitable	XC5
Condition	Normally ON/OFF、Rising edge	Models	
Hardware	-	Software	-
Requirement		Requirement	

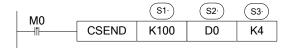
2: Operands

Operands	Function	Туре
S1	specify the ID number to send the data package	16bits, BIN
S2	specify the first ID number of sent data or soft component locally	16bits, BIN
S3	specify the byte number of sent data	16bits, BIN

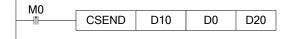
3: Suitable soft components

Word	Operands		System								constant	mo	dule
type		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•					•		
	S2	•	•		•	•							
	S3	•	•		•	•					•		

Functions and Actions



- Instruction to enable data sending, send data at every rising edge of M0
- ID number of sending data package is 100, 4 bytes data, the first ID is in D0
- 8 bits data transfer: the transferred data is: D0L, D1L, D2L, D3L (D0L means the low byte of D0)
- 16 bits data transfer: the transferred data is: D0L, D0H, D1L, D1H (D0H means the high byte of D0)



- The ID of sending data package is specified by D10, the data number is specified by D20, the first ID is in D0;
- 8 bits data transfer: the transferred data is: D0L, D1L, D2L, D3L (D0L means the low byte of D0)
- 16 bits data transfer: the transferred data is: D0L, D0H, D1L, D1H (D0H means the high byte of D0)
- Standard Frame: the valid bits of the data package ID number that is specified by D10 is the low 11 bits, the left bits are invalid;
- The expansion frame: the valid bits of the data package ID number that is specified by D10 is the low 29 bits, the left bits are invalid;
- The maximum data bits specified by D20 is 8, if exceeds 8, the instruction will send only 8 bits;

> CAN Receive [CRECV]

1: Instructions Summary

Write the specified data in one unit to a specified address in another unit (data transfers between different units)

CAN Receive [CRECV]

PLC Software Manual Page 273 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

16 bits	CRECV	32 bits	-
instruction		instruction	
Executing	Normally ON/OFF Bising	Suitable	XC5
Condition	Normally ON/OFF Rising	Models	
	edge		
Hardware	-	Software	-
Requirement		Requirement	

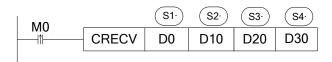
2: Operands

Operands	Function	Туре
S1	specify the ID number to receive the data package	16bits, BIN
S2	specify the first ID number of received soft	16bits, BIN
	component locally	
S3	specify the byte number of received data	16bits, BIN
S4	specify the soft component's start ID number of ID	16bits, BIN
	filter code	

3: Suitable soft components

Word	Operands			Constant	Мо	dule							
Type		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•							
	S2	•	•		•	•							
	S3	•	•		•	•							
	S4	•											

Functions and Actions



- The 32 bits memory combined by [D1, D0] (D0 is low byte, D1 is high byte) is used to stock ID number of the received data package. The received data length is stored in D20.
 The data content is stored in registers start from D10. D30 specifies the received ID filter code; if the received data doesn't fit the filter codes, then it will keep the RECV status;
- ID filter code: D30 specifies the start address of ID filter codes; the instruction specifies two groups of filter codes, occupy D30~D37 zone;

Filter	Memory	Description	Example
Code			
The	D31, D30	D30 low bytes, D31 high bytes,	D30=0xFFFF, D31=0x0000, then the
first		they compose a 32 bits mask	mask code is 0x0000FFFF
group		code	D30=0x1234, D31=0x0000, then filter
	D33, D32	D32 low bytes, D33 high bytes,	value is 0x00001234
		they compose a 32 bits filter	If ID and 0x0000FFFF equals
		value	0x00001234, the pass the first group
The	D35, D34	D34 low bytes, D35 high bytes,	of filter. If the ID pass any of two
first		they compose a 32 bits mask	groups, the allow the reception
group		code	
	D37, D36	D36 low bytes, D37 high bytes,	
		they compose a 32 bits filter	
		value	

- Standard/ expansion frame: the setting of FD8358 has no effect to reception. If the data frame fulfills ID mask codes, the standard frame and the expansion frames can be all received. When receive the standard frame, the ID bits is 11, but will still occupy the 32 bits memory combined by [D1,D0]
- 8 bits data transfer: the transfer data is: D0L, D1L, D2L, D3L.....(D0L means the low byte of D0)
- 16 bits data transfer: the transfer data is: D0L, D0H, D1L, D1H.....(D0H means the high byte of D0)

> Relate Special Soft Components List

1: System FD8000 Setting

ID	Function	Description					
		0: not usable					
FD8350	CAN Mode	1: XC-CAN network					
		2: Free format FREE					
		0, 1KBPS initial value, actual is 5KBPS.					
		1, 2KBPS initial value, actual is 5KBPS.					
		2, 5KBPS initial value					
		3, 10KBPS initial value					
		4, 20KBPS initial value					
	D8351 CAN baud rate	5, 40KBPS initial value					
		6, 50KBPS initial value					
FD8351		7, 80KBPS initial value					
	CAN bould rate	8, 100KBPS initial value					
	CAN baud rate	9, 150KBPS initial value					
		10, 200KBPS initial value					
		11, 250KBPS initial value					
		12, 300KBPS initial value					
		13, 400KBPS initial value					
		14, 500KBPS initial value					
		15, 600KBPS initial value					
		16, 800KBPS initial value					
		17, 1000KBPS initial value					
		low 8 bits: 0-standard frame .					
FD8358	CAN free format	low 8 bits: 1-expansion frame					
1 00000	mode	high 8 bits: 0-8 bits data store					
		high 8 bits: 1-16 bits data store					
FD8359	CAN accept	for free format using, unit: ms					
1 00009	timeout time	ioi nee ioimat using, unit. ms					
	CAN send timeout	fixed to be 5ms					
	time	lixed to be offis					

2: System M8000 flag

ID	Function	Description
M8240	CAN error flag	ON: error happens

		OFF: normal							
		if set M8242 as ON, and manually set M8240 as							
		ON, this will enable CAN reset							
		XC-CAN mode valid							
M8241	CAN node dropped off flag	ON: certain node/nodes are dropped off							
		OFF: Normal							
M0242	do reset or not if CAN error	ON: CAN reset automatically when error happens							
M8242	happens	OFF: take no operation when error happens							
		FREE mode valid							
M8243	CAN send/accept finished	ON: receive/accept finish							
1010243	flag	reset ON automatically when starting to							
		send/accept							
	CAN send/accept timeout	FREE mode valid							
M8244	flag	ON: send/accept timeout							
	liay	Set OFF automatically when starting to send/accept							

3: System D8000

ID	Function	Description				
		0: no error				
		2: initializing error				
D8240	CAN error information	30: CAN bus error				
		31: error alarm				
		32: data overflow				
D8241	configure item number when	XC-CAN valid				
D8241 error happens	error happens	AO-OAN Vallu				
D8242	data package number sent	both XC-CAN and FREE modes are valid				
20212	every second	Both 700 67 th and 1 NEE modes are valid				
D8243	data package number	both XC-CAN and FREE modes are valid				
20210	accepted every second	Both 700 67 th and 1 NEE modes are valid				
	CAN communication error	correspond with M8240				
D8244	counter	at every CAN error, M8240 will be set ON				
	Counter	one time, D8244 increase 1				

8

PID Control Function

In this chapter, we mainly introduce the applications of PID instructions for XC Series PLC basic units, including: call the instructions, set the parameters, items to note, sample programs etc.

8-1. Brief Introduction of the Functions
0.0 Instruction Formats
8-2. Instruction Formats
8-3. Parameter Setting
8-4. Autotune Mode
8-5. Advanced Mode
8-6.Application Outlines
8-7. Sample Programs



8-1 Brief Introduction of the Functions

PID instructions and auto-tune functions are added into XC Series PLC basic units (Version 3.0 and above). Via auto-tune method, users can achive the best sampling time and PID parameters and improve the control precision.

The previous versions cannot support PID function on basic units unless they extend with analog modules or BD cards. PID instruction has brought many facilities to the users.

- 1. The output can be data form $\bf D$ and on-off quantity $\bf Y$, user can choose them freely when programming.
- 2. Via auto-tune, users can achive the best sampling time and PID parameters and improve the control precision.
- 3. User can choose positive or negative movement via software setting. The former is used in heating control; the later is used in cooling control.
- 4. PID control separates the basic units with the expansions; this improves the flexibility of this function.

PLC Software Manual Page 279 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



8-2 Instruction Forms

1: Brief Introductions of the Instructions

Execute PID control instructions with the data in specified registers.

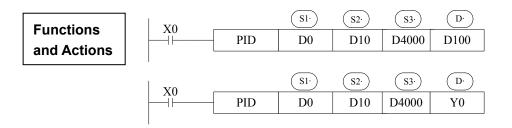
PID control	[PID]	_		
16 bits	PID	32	bits	-
instruction		instruc	tion	
Executing	cuting Normally ON/normally closed Suitable		XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM	
Condition	coil activates	Models	S	ACZ, AC3, AC5, ACIVI
Hardware	V3.0 or above	Softwa	re	V3.0 or above
Condition		Condit	ion	

2: Operands

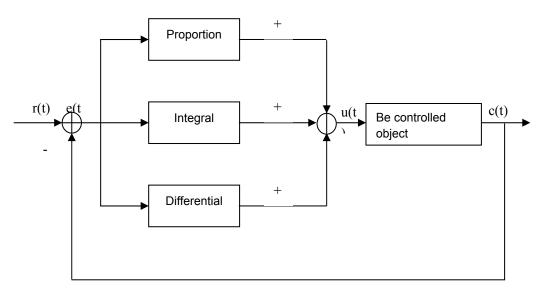
Operands	Usage	Туре
S1	set the ID Nr. of the target value (SV)	16bits, BIN
S2	set the ID Nr. of the tested value (PV)	16 bits, BIN
S3	set the first ID Nr. of the control parameters	16 bits, BIN
D	the ID Nr. of the operation resule (MV) or output port	16 bits, BIN

3: Suitable soft components

Word	Operands	System									Constant	Мо	dule
Туре		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•									•		
	S2	•										•	
	S3	•											
	D	•											•
Bit	Operands				Sys	tem							
Туре		Х	Υ	М	S	Т	С	D	n.m				
	D		•	•	•	•	•						



- S3~ S3+ 43 will be occupied by this instruction, do not use them as the common data registers.
- This instruction executes with each sampling time interval.
- To the operation result D, the data registers are used to store PID output values; the output points are used to output the occupy ratio in the form of ON/OFF.
- PID control rules are shown as below:



$$e(t) = r(t) - c(t)$$
 (1-1)

$$u(t) = Kp [e(t) + 1/Ti e(t)dt + TD de(t)/dt]$$
 (1-2)

Here, e(t) is warp, r(t) is the given value, c(t) is the actual output value, u(t) is the control value;

In function (1-2), Kp is the proportion coefficient, Ti is the integration time coefficient, and TD is the differential time coefficient.

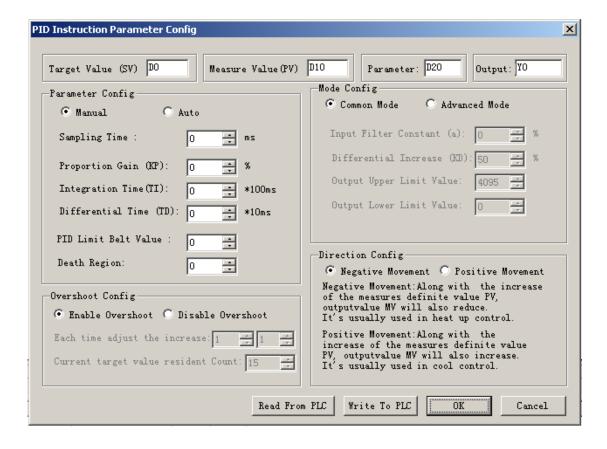
The result of the operation:

- 5. Analog output: MV= digital form of u (t), the default range is $0 \sim 4095$.
- Digital output: Y=T*[MV/PID output upper limit]. Y is the output's activation time within the
 control cycle. T is the control cycle, equals to the sampling time. PID output upper limit
 default value is 4095.



8-3 Parameters Setting

Users can call PID instructions in XCP Pro software directly and set the parameters in the window (see graph below), for the details please refer to XCP Pro user manual. Users can also write the parameters into the specified registers by MOV instructions before PID operation.



PLC Software Manual Page 282 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

8-3-1 Register and their Functions

For PID control instruction's relative parameters ID, please refer to the below table:

ID	Function	Description	Memo
S3	sampling time	32 bits without sign	Unit: ms
S3+1	sampling time	32 bits without sign	Unit: ms
S3+2	mode setting	bit0:	
		0: Negative; 1 Negative;	
		bit1 ~ bit6 not usable	
		bit7:	
		0: Manual PID; 1: Auto-tune PID	
		bit8:	
		1: Auto-tune successful flag	
		bit9 ~ bit14 not usable	
		bit15:	
		0: regular mode; 1: advanced mode	
S3+3	Proportion Gain (Kp)	Range: 1 ~ 32767[%]	
S3+4	Integration time (TI)	0 ~ 32767[*100ms]	0 is taken as no integral.
S3+5	Differential time (TD)	0 ~ 32767[*10ms]	0 is taken as no differential.
S3+6	PID operation zone	0 ~ 32767	PID adjustment band width
			value.
S3+7	control death zone	0 ~ 32767	PID value keeps constant in
			death zone
S3+8	PID Auto-tune cycle	full scale AD value * (0.3~1%)	
	varied value		
S3+9	PID Auto-tune	0: enable overshoot	
	overshoot permission	1:disable overshoot	
S3+10	current target value		
	adjustment percent in		
	auto-tune finishing		
	transition stage		
S3+11	current target value		
	resident count in		
	auto-tune finishing		
00.40	transition stage		
S3+12~	occupied by PID		
S3+39	operation's internal process		
Below is the ID of advanced PID mode setting			
S3+40	Input filter constant (a)	0~99[%]	0: no input filter
S3+40	Differential gain (KD)	0~100[%]	0: no differential gain
S3+41	Output upper limit value	-32767 ~ 32767	o. no dinoronial gain
S3+42	Output lower limit value	-32767 ~ 32767	
JJ 1 1 J	Output lower littlit value	-02101 - 02101	

8-3-2 Parameters Description

Movement Direction:

- Positive movement: the output value MV will increase with the increasing of the detected value PV, usually used for cooling control.
- Negative movement: the output value MV will decrease with the increasing of the detected value PV, usually used for heating control.

Mode Setting

Common Mode:

The parameter's register zone is from **S3** to **S3**+43, **S3** to **S3**+11 and needs to be set by users. **S3**+12 to **S3**+43+12 are occupied by the system and are not available to users.

Advanced Mode:

The parameter's register zone is from **S3** to **S3**+43, **S3** to (**S3**+11) and (**S3**+40) to (**S3**+43) need to be set by users. (**S3**+12) to (**S3**+39) are occupied by the system and are not available to users.

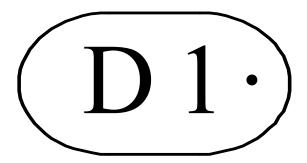
Sample Time [S3]

The system samples the current value according to certain time interval and compare them with the output value. This time interval is the sample time **T**. There is no requirement for **T** during **AD** output. **T** should be larger than one PLC scan period during port output. **T** value should be chosen among 100~1000 times of PLC scan periods.

PID Operation Zone [S3+6]

PID control is entirely opened at the beginning and close to the target value with the highest speed (the defaulted value is 4095), when it entered into the PID computation range, parameters Kp, Ti, TD will be effective.

See graph below:



If the target value is 100, PID operation zone is 10, then the real PID's operation zone is from 90 to 110.

Death Region [S3+7]

Within this region the PID value will not vary. This stops the system from making small changes which will imbalance the system.



Suppose: we set the death region value to be 10. Then in the above graph, the difference is only 2 comparing the current value with the last value. The PID control will not change value. The difference is 13 (more than death region 10) comparing the current value with the next value, this difference value is larger than control death region value, the PID control will start to vary.



If users do not know how to set the PID parameters, they can choose auto-tune mode which can find the optimal control parameters (sampling time, proportion gain **Kp**, integral time **Ti**, differential time **TD**) automatically.

- I. Auto-tune mode is suitable for these objectives: temperature, pressure; but is not suitable for liquid level and flow.
- II. Users can set the sampling cycle to be 0 at the beginning of the auto-tune process then modify the value manually in terms of practical needs after the auto-tune process is completed.
- III. Before selecting auto-tune, the system should be under the no-control steady state. If the function is to 'Take the temperature' for example: the detected temperature should be the same as the environment temperature.

To enter the auto-tune mode, please set bit7 of (S3+ 2) to be 1 and turn on PID working condition. If bit8 of (S3+ 2) turns to 1, it means the auto-tune is successful.

• PID auto-tune period value [S3+ 8]

Set this value in [S3+ 8] during auto-tune.

This value decides the auto-tune performance, in a general way, set this value to be the AD result corresponding to one standard detected unit. The default value is 10. The suggested setting range:

full-scale AD result × 0.3 ~ 1%.

This value does not normally need altering, however, if the system is interfered greatly by outside, this value should be increased modestly to avoid wrong judgment for positive or negative movement. If this value is too large, the PID control period (sampling time) set by the auto-tune process will be too long.

 \times 1: if users have no experience, please use the defaulted value 10, set PID sampling time (control period) to be 0ms then start the auto-tune.

PID auto-tune overshooting permission setting [S3+ 9]

If set 0, overshooting is permitted, the system can study the optimal PID parameters all the time. But in self-study process, detected value may be lower or higher than the target value, safety factor should be considered here.

If set 1, overshooting is not permitted. For these objectives which have strict safety demand such as pressure vessel, set [S3+ 9] to be 1 to prevent from detected value being seriously over the target value. In this process, if [S3+ 2] bit8 changes from 0 to 1, it means the auto-tune is successful and the optimal parameters are set; if [S3+ 2] is always 0 until [S3+ 2] bit7 changes from 1 to 0, it means the auto-tune is completed but the parameters are not the best and need to be modified by users.

Every adjustment percent of current target value at auto-tune process finishing transition

PLC Software Manual Page 286 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

stage [S3+10]

This parameter is effective only when [S3+ 9] is 1.

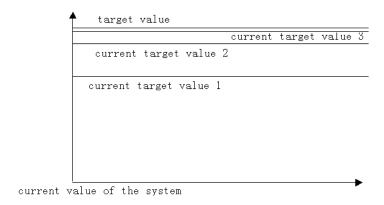
If setting PID control after auto-tune, small range of overshooting may be occurred. It is better to decrease this parameter to control the overshooting. But response delay may occur if this value is too small. The defaulted value is 100% which means the parameter is not effective. The recommended range is 50~80%.

Cutline Explanation:

Current target value adjustment percent is 2/3 (**S3 + 10** = 67%), the original temperature of the system is 0 °C, target temperature is 100 °C, the current target temperature adjustment situation is shown as below:

Next current target value = current target value + (final target value – current target value) × 2/3;

So the changing sequence of current target is 66 °C, 88 °C, 96 °C, 98 °C, 99 °C, 100 °C.



• The stay times of the current target value at auto-tune process finishing transition stage [S3+11]

This parameter is valid only when [S3+9] is 1;

If entering into PID control directly after auto-tune, small range of overshoot may occur. Overshoot can be prevented if increasing this parameter properly, but it will cause response lag if this value is too large. The default value is 15 times. The recommended range is from 5 to 20.



8-5 Advanced Mode

PLC Software Manual Page 287 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

Users can set some parameters in advanced mode in order to get the better effect of PID control. Enter into the advanced mode, please set **[S3+2]** bit 15 to be 1, or set it in the XCP Pro software.

Input Filter constant
 It will smooth the sampling value. The default value is 0% which means no filter.

Differential Gain

The low pass filtering process will relax the sharp change of the output value. The default value is 50%, the relaxing effect will be more obviously if increasing this value. Users do not need to change it.

Upper-limit and lower-limit value

Users can choose the analog output range via setting this value.

Default value: lower- limit output= 0

Upper -limit= 4095



8-6 Application Outlines

- Under continuous output, the system whose effectability will die down with the change of the feedback value can do self-study, such as temperature or pressure. It is not suitable for flux or liquid level.
- Under the condition of overshoot permission, the system will get the optimal PID parameters from self-study.
- Under the condition of overshoot not allowed, the PID parameters got from self-study is
 up to the target value, it means that different target value will produce different PID
 parameters which are not the optimal parameters of the system and for reference only.
- If the self-study is not available, users can set the PID parameters according to practical experience. Users need to modify the parameters when debugging. Below are some experience values of the control system for your reference:
 - ◆ Temperature system:

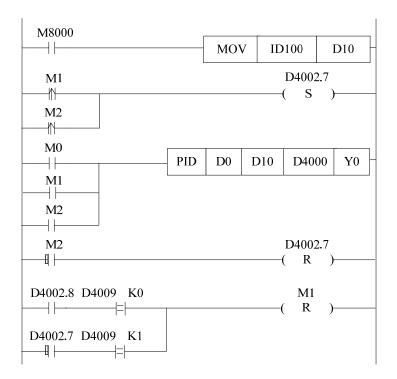
P (%) 2000 ~ 6000, I (minutes) 3 ~ 10, D (minutes) 0.5 ~ 3

- ◆ Flux system: P (%) 4000 ~ 10000, I (minutes) 0.1 ~ 1
- ◆ Pressure system: P (%) 3000 ~ 7000, I (minutes) 0.4 ~ 3
- ◆ Liquid level system: P (%) 2000 ~ 8000, I (minutes) 1 ~ 5



8-7 Example Program

PID Control Program is shown below:



Soft components function comments:

D4000.7: auto-tune bit

D4002.8: auto-tune successful sign

M0: normal PID controlM1: auto-tune control

M2: enter into PID control after auto-tune

- // Move ID100 content into D10
- // convert PID mode to be auto tune at the beginning of auto tune control starts or auto tune finish
- // start PID, D0 is target value, D10 is detected value, from D4000 the zone is PID parameters area; output PID result via Y0
- // PID control finish, close auto tune PID mode
- // if auto tune is successful, and overshoot is permitted, close auto tune control bit, auto tune finish; If auto tune turns to be manual mode, and auto tune is not permitted, close auto tune control bit

9

C Language Function Block

In this chapter, we focus on C language function block's specifications; edition; instruction calling; application points etc. We end the chapter with the common functions list.

9-1 . Functions Summary
9-2 . Instrument Form
9-3 . Operation Steps
9-4 . Import and Export of the Functions
9-5 . Function Block Editing
9-6 . Example Program
9-7 . Application Points
9-8 . C Language Function List



9-1 Functions Summary

This is the new added function in XCP Pro software. This function enables the customers to write function blocks with C language in XCP Pro and call the function blocks at any necessary place. This function supports most of C language functions, strength the program's security. As users can call the function at many places and call different functions, this function increases the programmer's efficiency greatly.



1:Instruction Summary

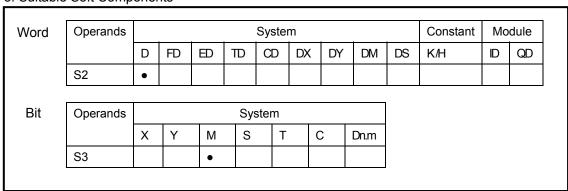
Call the C language Function Block at the specified place

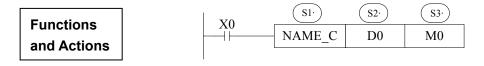
Call the C language Function Block [NAME_C]				
16 bits	NAME_C		32 bits	-
Instruction			Instruction	
Execution	Normally	ON/OFF,	Suitable	VC4 VC2 VC2 VC5 VCM
Condition	Rising/Falling	Edge	Models	XC1、XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM
	activation			
Hardware	V3.0C and above		Software	V3.0C and above
Requirement			Requirement	

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Туре
S1	name of C Function Block, defined by the user	String
S2	Correspond with the start ID of word W in C language	16bits, BIN
	Function	
S3	Correspond with the start ID of word B in C language	16bits, BIN
	Function	

3: Suitable Soft Components



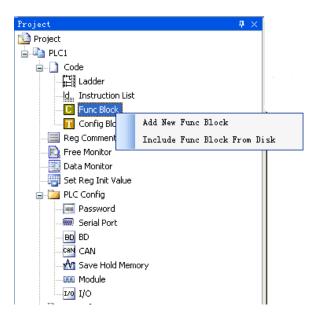


- The name is composed by numbers, letters and underscores, the first character must not be a number and the name shouldn't be longer than 8 ASC.
- The name can't be same with PLC's internal instructions e.g. LD, ADD, SUB, PLSR etc.
- The name can't be same as any function blocks already existing in the PLC.

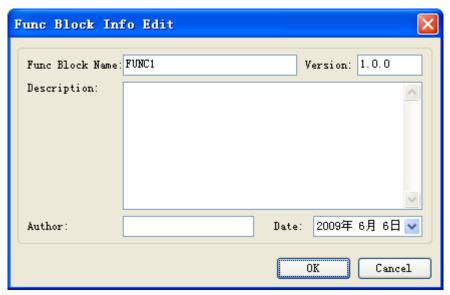
9-3 Operation Steps



1: Open PLC edit tool, in the left "Project" toolbar, choose "Function Block", right click it and choose "Add New Function Block"

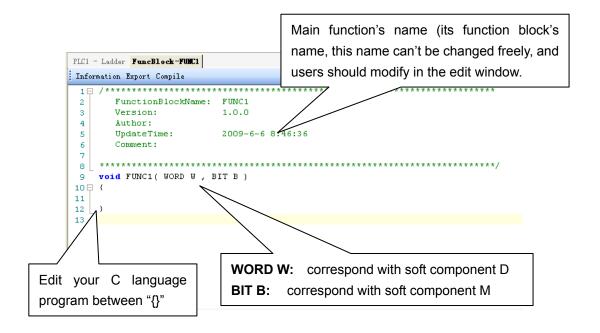


2: See graph below, fill in the information of your function;



3: After creating the new Function Block, you can see the edit interface as shown below:

PLC Software Manual Page 293 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



- Parameters' transfer format: if Function Block is called in ladder format, the transferred D and M is the start ID of W and B. Take the above graph as the example, start with D0 and M0, then W[0] is D0, W[10] is D10, B[0 is M0, B[10] is M10. If in the ladder the used parameters are D100, M100, then W[0] is D100, B [0] is M100. So, word and bit component's start address is defined in PLC program by the user.
- Parameter W: represent Word soft component, use in the form of data group. E.g. W[0]=1;W[1]=W[2]+W[3]; in the program, use according to standard C language rules.
- Parameter B: represents Bit soft component, use in the form of data group. Supports SET and RESET. E.g: B[0]=1;B[1]=0; And assignment, for example B[0]=B[1].
- Double-word operation: add **D** in front of **W**, e.g. DW[10]=100000, it means assignment to the double-word W[10]W[11]
- Floating Operation: Supports the definition of floating variable in the function, and executes floating operation;
- Function Library: In Function Block, users can use the Functions and Variables in function library directly. For the Functions and Variables in function library, see the C Language Function List at the end of this chapter.

PLC Software Manual Page 294 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

• The other data type supported:

BOOL; //BOOL Quantity INT8U; //8 bits unsigned integral INT8S; //8 bits signed integral INT16U //16 bits unsigned integral INT16S //8 bits signed integral INT32U //32 bits unsigned integral INT32S //32 bits signed integral FP32; //Single precision Floating FP64; // Double precision Floating

Predefined Marco

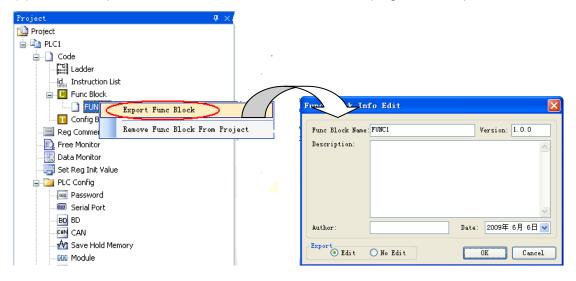
#define true 1
#define false 0
#define TRUE 1
#define FALSE 0



9-4 Import and Export the Functions

1: Export

(1) Function: export the function as the file, then other PLCs program can import to use;

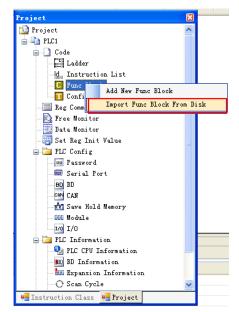


(2) Export Format

- a) Editable; export the source codes and save as a file. If imported again, the file is editable.
 - b) Not editable: if the source code is not exported the file will be read-only by third parties.

2: Import

Function; Import the existing **Function Block** file, to use in the PLC program;



Choose the **Function Block**, right click "Import Function Block From Disk", choose the correct file, then click OK.

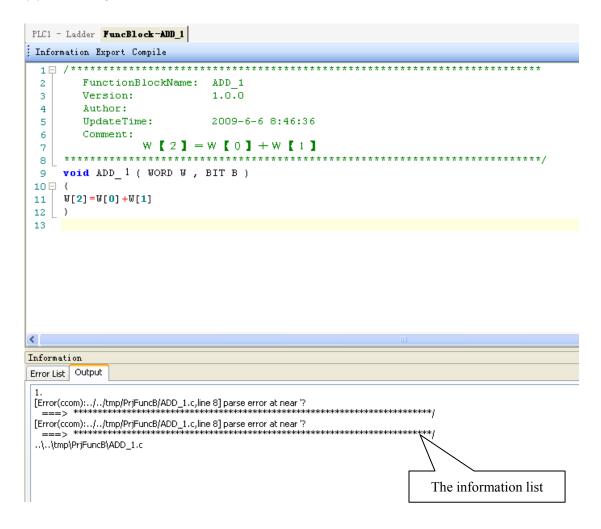


9-5 Edit the Function Blocks

PLC Software Manual Page 296 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

Example: Add D0 and D1 in the PLC's registers, then assign the value to D2;

- (1) In "Project" toolbar, new create a **Function Block**, here we name the **Function Block** as **ADD_2**, then edit C language program;
- (2) Click compile after edition

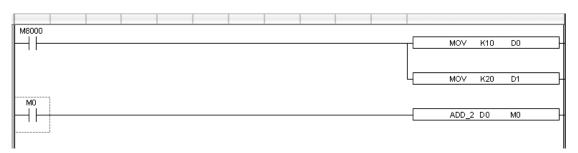


According to the information shown in the output blank, we can search and modify the grammar error in C language program. Here we can see that in the program there is no ";" sign behind W[2]=W[0]+W[1];

Compile the program again after modify the program. In the information list, we can confirm that there is now no grammar error in the program.

```
PLC1 - Ladder FuncBlock-ADD_1
Information Export Compile
 1 🖯
       FunctionBlockName: ADD_1
 3
       Version:
                        1.0.0
       Author:
 4
                       2009-6-6 10:31:47
       UpdateTime:
       Comment:
               W[2]=W[1]+W[0]
    void ADD_1( WORD W , BIT B )
10 □ {
    W[2] = W[1] + W[0];
11
12 [
13
Error List Output
1. ..\..\tmp\PrjFuncB\ADD_1.c
```

(3) Write PLC program, assign value 10 and 20 into registers D0, D1 separately, then call Function Block ADD_2, see graph below:



(4) Download program into PLC, run PLC and set M0.



(5) From Free Monitor in the toolbar, we can see that D2 changes to be 30, it means the assignment is successful.





9-6 Example Program

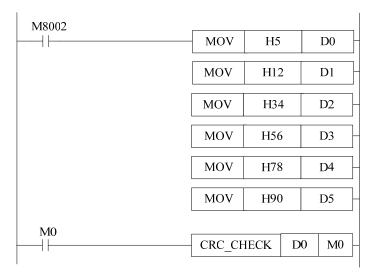
- Function: calculate CRC parity value via Function Block
- CRC calculation rules:
- (1) Set 16 bits register (CRC register) = FFFF H
- (2) XOR (Exclusive OR) 8 bits information with the low byte of the 16 bits CRC register.
- (3) Right shift 1 bit of CRC register, fill 0 in the highest bit.
- (4) Check the right shifted value, if it is 0, save the new value from step3 into CRC register; if it is not 0, XOR the CRC register value with A001 H and save the result into the CRC register.
- (5) Repeat step3&4 until all the 8 bits have been calculated.
- (6) Repeat step2~5, then calculate the next 8 bits information. Until all the information has been calculated, the result will be the CRC parity code in CRC register.
- Edit C language Function Block program, see graph below:

```
void CRC_CHECK( WORD W , BIT B )
10 □ {
         int i,j,m,n;
11
         unsigned int reg_crc=0xffff,k;
12
13
14
         for (i = 0; i < W[0]; i++)
15 🗀
              reg crc^=W[i+1];
16
              for (j=0; j<8; j++)</pre>
17
18 🖨
19
              if (reg_crc 60x01)
                  reg_crc=(reg_crc>>1)^0xa001;
20
21
              else
22
                  reg crc=reg crc>>1;
23
              }
              }
24
25
              m = W[0] + 1;
26
              n=W[0]+2;
27
28
              k=reg crc&0xff00;
              W[m] = k >> 8;
29
              W[n] = reg_crc & 0xff;
30
31
```

Edit PLC ladder program,

D0: Parity data byte number;

D1~D5: Parity data's content, see graph below:



 Download to PLC, then RUN PLC, set M0, via Free Monitor, we can find that values in D6 and D7 are the highest and lowest bit of CRC parity value.



9-7 Application Points

- When uploading a PLC program which contains some Function Blocks, the Function Blocks can't be uploaded, there will be an error say: There is an unknown instruction;
- In one Function Block file, you can write many subsidiary functions, can call each other;
- Each Function Block files are independent, they can't call its owned functions;
- Function Block files can call C language library functions in form of floating, arithmetic like sin, cos, tan etc.



9-8 C Language Function List

The default function library

Constant	Data	Description
_LOG2	(double)0.693147180559945309417232121458	Logarithm of 2
_LOG10	(double)2.3025850929940459010936137929093	Logarithm of 10
_SQRT2	(double)1.41421356237309504880168872421	Radical of 2
_PI	(double)3.1415926535897932384626433832795	PI
_PIP2	(double)1.57079632679489661923132169163975	PI/2
_PIP2x3	(double)4.71238898038468985769396507491925	PI*3/2

String Function		Description	
void	* momehr/const void *s. int s. sizs. t.n):	Return the first c position among n words before	
void	* memchr(const void *s, int c, size_t n);	s position	
int	memcmp(const void *s1, const void *s2, size_t n);	Compare the first n words of position s1 and s2	
void	* memcpy(void *s1, const void *s2, size_t n);	Copy n words from position s2 to s1and return	
		s1	
void '	* memset(void *s, int c, size_t n);	Replace the n words start from s position with	
		word c , and return position s	
char	* strcat(char *s1, const char *s2);	Connect string ct behind string s	
char	* strchr(const char *s, int c);	Return the first word c position in string s	
int	strcmp(const char *s1, const char *s2);	Compare string s1 and s2	
char	* strcpy(char *s1, const char *s2);	Copy string s1 to string s2	

PLC Software Manual Page 301 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

Double-precision math function	Single-precision math function	Description	
double acos(double x);	oat acosf(float x);	Inverse cosine function.	
double asin(double x);	float asinf(float x);	Inverse sine function	
double atan(double x);	float atanf(float x);	Inverse tangent function	
double atan2(double y, double x);	float atan2f(float y, float x);	Inverse tangent value of	
double ataliz(double y, double x),	moat atamentmoat y, moat xy,	parameter (y/x)	
		Return the smallest double	
double ceil(double x);	float ceilf(float x);	integral which is greater or equal	
		with parameter x	
double cos(double x);	float cosf(float x);	Cosine function	
double cosh(double x);	float coshf(float x);	Hyperbolic cosine function	
	at ooo(oat //),	$cosh(x)=(e^x+e^(-x))/2.$	
double exp(double x);	float expf(float x);	Exponent (e^x) of a nature data	
double fabs(double x);	float fabsf(float x);	Absolute value of parameter x	
		Return the largets dounble	
double floor(double x);	float floorf(float x);	integral which is smaller or	
		equals with x	
double fmod(double x, double y);	float fmodf(float x, float y);	If y is not zero, return the	
		reminder of floating x/y	
		Break floating data x to be	
double frexp(double val, int _far *exp);	float frexpf(float val, int _far *exp);	mantissa and exponent x =	
,,		m*2^exp, return the mantissa of	
		m, save the logarithm into exp .	
double ldexp(double x, int exp);	float Idexpf(float x, int exp);	X multipy the (two to the power of	
		n) is x*2^n.	
double log(double x);	float logf(float x);	Nature logarithm logx	
double log10(double x);	float log10f(float x);	logarithm (log10x)	
	float modff(float val, float *pd);	Break floating data X to be	
double modf(double val, double *pd);		integral part and decimal part,	
, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,		return the decimal part, save the	
		integral part into parameter ip.	
double pow(double x, double y);	float powf(float x, float y);	Power value of parameter y (x^y)	
double sin(double x);	float sinf(float x);	sine function	
double sinh(double x);	float sinhf(float x);	Hyperbolic sine function,	
		$sinh(x)=(e^x-e^(-x))/2.$	
double sqrt(double x);	float sqrtf(float x);	Square root of parameter X	
double tan(double x);	float tanf(float x);	tangent function.	
double tanh(double x);	float tanhf(float x);	Hyperbolic tangent function,	
2220 talling addition Ny,		$tanh(x)=(e^x-e^(-x))/(e^2+e^(-x)).$	

10 Sequential Function BLOCK

This chapter describes the basic concepts; internal instruction manipulation; relative instructions; executing form and application points of Sequential Function Blocks.

10-1 . Basic Concept of Block
10-2 . Call the Block
10-3 . Edit the Internal Instructions of Block
10-4 . Execute Form of Block
10-5 . Edit Requirements with Block Internal Instructions
10-6 . Block Relative Instructions
10-7 . Block Execute Falg Bit/Register

Relative Instructions:

Mnemonic	Function	Circuit and soft components	chapter
SEQUENTIAL FUNCTION BLOCK			
BSTOP	Pause the execution of BLOCK	BSTOP S1 S2	10-6-1
BGOON	Continue to execute BLOCK	BGOON S1 S2	10-6-1

PLC Software Manual Page 304 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



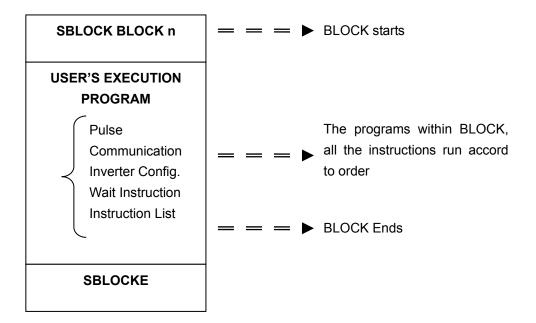
10-1 BLOCK Basic Concept

10-1-1 BLOCK Summary

Sequential function block, in short BLOCK, is a program block to realize certain functions. We can treat the block as a special flow, in this special flow, all the programs run according to one principle, i.e. sequential execution principle; this is how BLOCK differs from other programs.

BLOCK starts with SBLOCK, ends with SBLOCKE, the programmer writes programs between them. If in one BLOCK there are many "send pulse" instructions (also same with other type of instructions), then the pulse instructions will run according to the time order of the activate conditions; the next pulse instruction runs only after the previous instruction finishes.

See a whole BLOCK structure below:

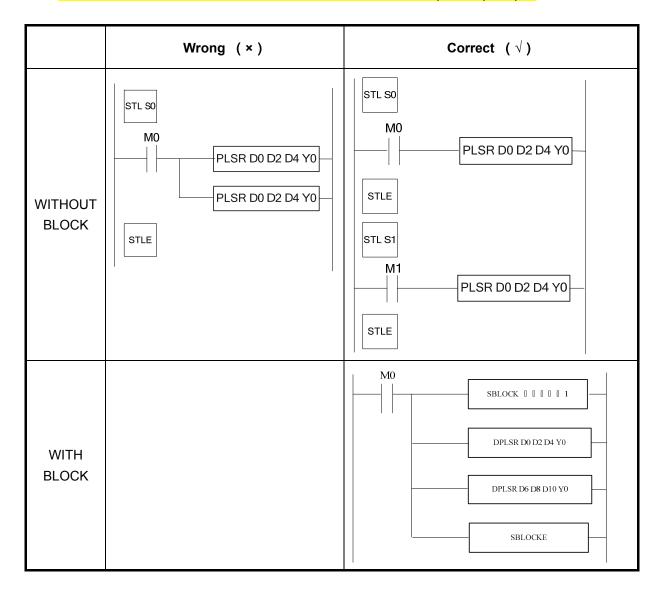


PLC Software Manual Page 305 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

10-1-2 Reason to introduce BLOCK

How to write instructions to optimize the original pulse, communication in flows;

As in XCP Pro, we don't support to run many pulse, communication instructions in one flow, it's troublesome to write the program. With BLOCK, we support writing many pulse, communication instructions, all the instructions run accord to sequential principle;



PLC Software Manual Page 306 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

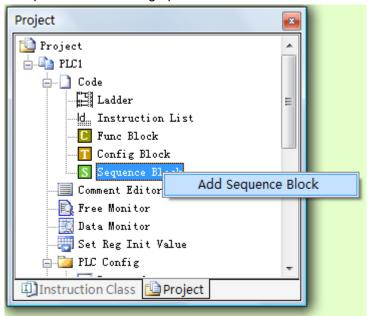


10-2 Call the BLOCK

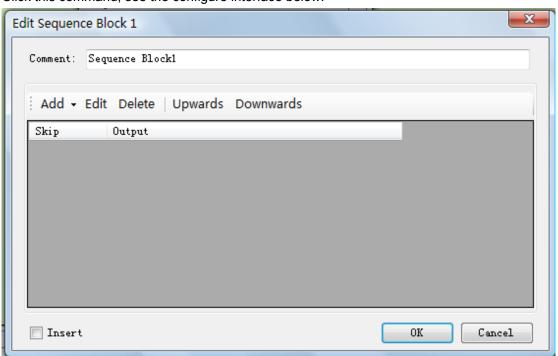
In one program, you can call many BLOCKs. Call BLOCK via XCP Pro. See method below:

10-2-1 Add a BLOCK

Open XCP Pro, in the left toolbar, find "Sequence Block", right click it, you can see "Add Sequence Block". See graph below:



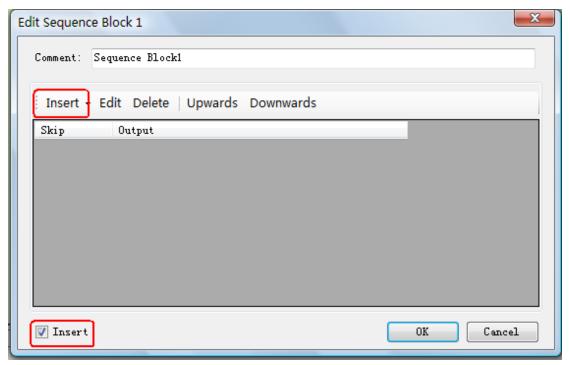
Click this command, see the configure interface below:



PLC Software Manual Page 307 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

The above interface is used to edit one BLOCK, in that interface you can add many program sections, modify and delete the correspond sections, including pulse, communication, motion control etc; upwards/downwards is used to up/down shift the instructions in BLOCK.

Please note: in the left bottom there is a "inset" item, if you choose it, the "Add" button will change to be "Insert:, see screenshot below:

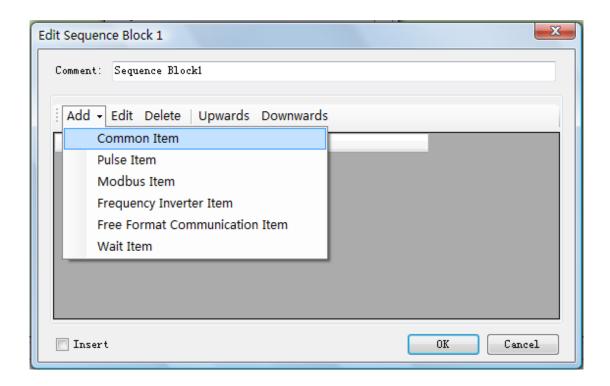


The difference between "Add" and "Insert":

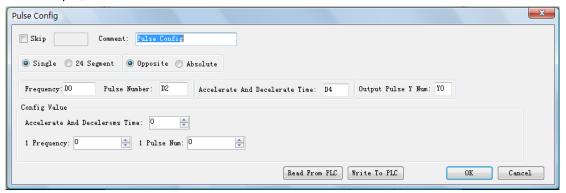
Add: add the specified content at the end of BLOCK;

Insert: add the specified content at any place of BLOCK;

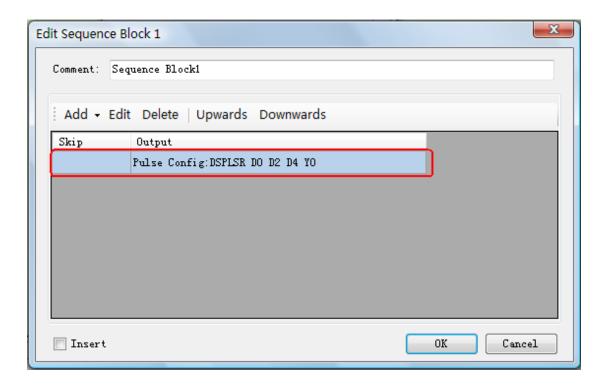
Click "Add", you can see that the system lists all the instruction types you may use, including instruction list, pulse configure, Modbus instruction, Wait instruction, inverter read/write, free format communication; see screenshot below:



For example, add a "Pulse Item" in the BLOCK and set it:



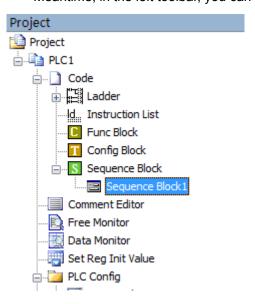
Click OK, we can see that in the configure interface, the corresponding information also been added, see screenshot below:



Click "OK", in the Ladder interface, you can see the instructions section as below:



Meantime, in the left toolbar, you can see the new added block, see graph below:

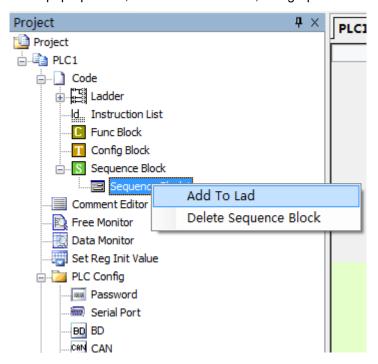


10-2-2 Move the BLOCK

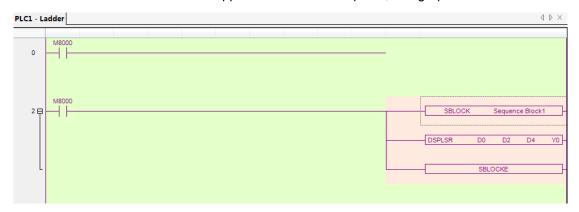
If you want to move the created BLOCK elsewhere, you should delete the original BLOCK (choose all and delete), see graph below:



Then move the mouse to the required place, activate this place; right click the created BLOCK, in the pop-up menu, choose "Add To Lad", see graph below:



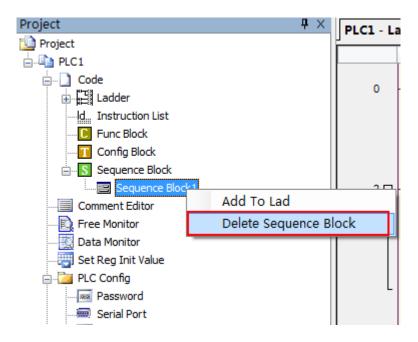
Here we can see that the BLOCK appears at the activate place, see graph below



10-2-3 Delete the BLOCK

If just delete the BLOCK called in the program, you can choose the BLOCK area and delete (refer the previous method).

If you want to delete one BLOCK thoroughly, choose "Delete Sequence Block". After this, you can't call it any more, the only method is to add it again; see graph below:

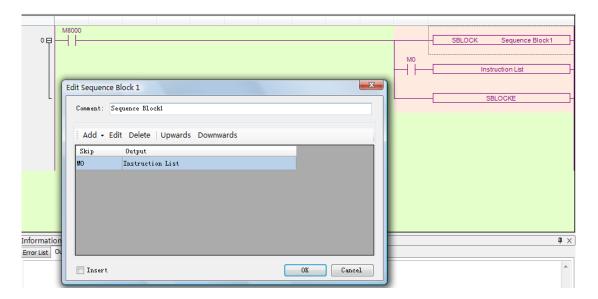


10-2-4 Modify the BLOCK

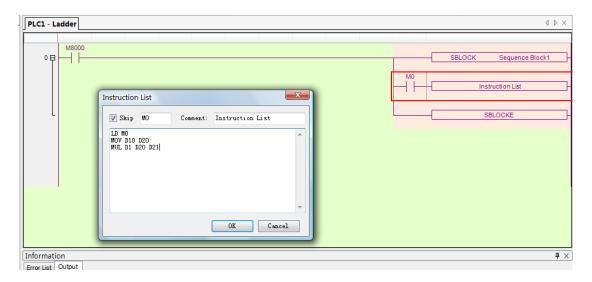
PLC Software Manual Page 312 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

After adding the BLOCK, if you want to modify it totally, you just click the start and end segments in the ladder window; if you just want to modify a certain program segment, you just double-click the instruction. The two methods are shown below:

(A) Double click the start/end segment of BLOCK:



(B) Double click certain instruction:



10-3 Edit the internal instructions in BLOCK

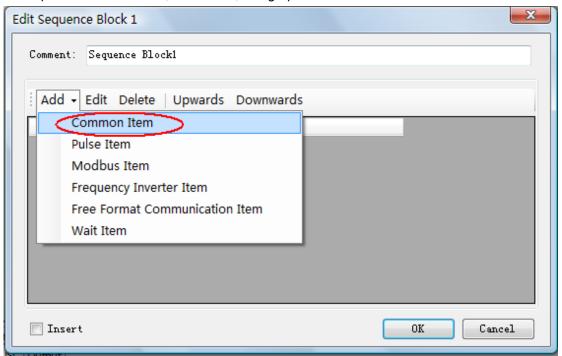
PLC Software Manual Page 313 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



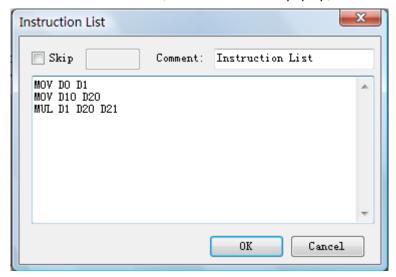
10-3-1 Common Item

In order to add the programs to BLOCK freely, we enable the user to write instructions in form of instruction list.

Open the edit interface, click "Add", see graph below:



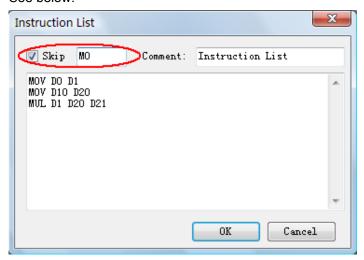
Click "Common Item", a new interface will pop up, see below:



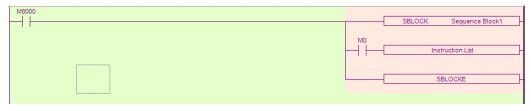
In the interface, user can add the required programs freely. The point to note is that, "Skip" is

PLC Software Manual Page 314 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

used to control the run or not on the instructions. If not fill it in, it default to run; if choose "Skip", and fill in the control coil, then when the coil activates, the instructions will not be executed. See below:



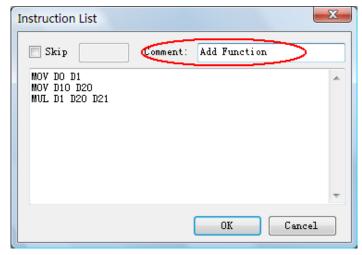
Click "OK", in the ladder you can see program as shown below:



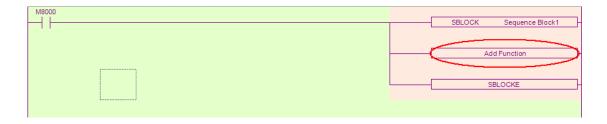
The M0 before "Instruction List" is the condition to run the instruction or not.

Note: In one BLOCK, user can add many program segments, each segment is controlled by "SKIP". If the condition is true, then skip to run the instruction; if the condition is false or vacant, execute the instruction.

In the above graph, the instruction list is not shown in details, but you can add the comments according to the program's function. See below:

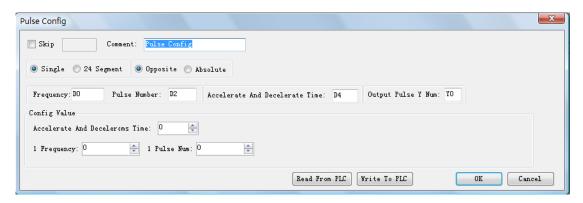


After adding the comment, BLOCK changes in the ladder, see graph below:



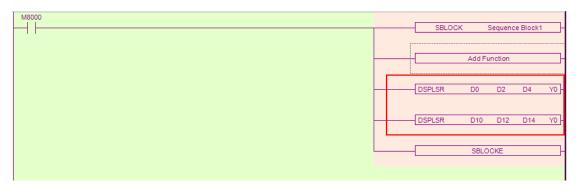
10-3-2 Pulse Configure

Open "Pulse Config" interface with the same method, see below:



In this configure interface, you can set pulse output form, single or 24 segments, opposite or absolute. Write the other parameters in the corresponding blanks, like frequency, pulse, acceleration and deceleration time, pulse number etc.

Add two sending pulse instruction into "BLOCK", see below:



 $\times 1$: In BLOCK, the pulse output instructions are both in 32 bits form;

10-3-3 Modbus Instruction

Modbus Config

Skip M1 Comment: Modbus Config

Select Instruction: Coil Read[COLR]

Coil Read[COLR]

Remote Station Num: K1 COM Num: K2

Remote Coil Address: K0 Coil Count: K3

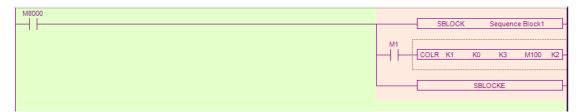
Local Coil Address: M100

As before, open Modbus instructions configure interface, see below:

Modbus instructions configuration is easy, just choose "Modbus Item" from the draw down menu, fill in the remote station Nr., COM Nr., local coil ID, coil Nr., the system will generate the instruction automatically. See below:

Cancel

0K

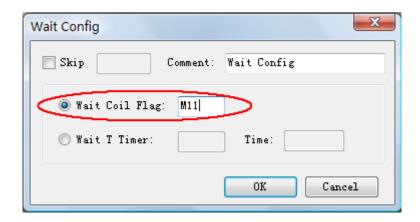


10-3-4 Wait Instruction

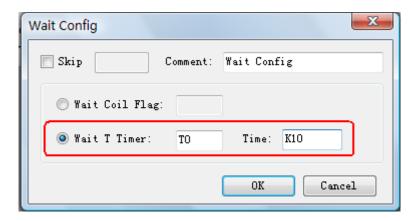
Same asthe previous method, open Wait configure interface. Wait instruction is used to wait

the flag bit or time. There are two wait forms in the configure interface, one is the flg bit, the other is timer. See the configure method as below:

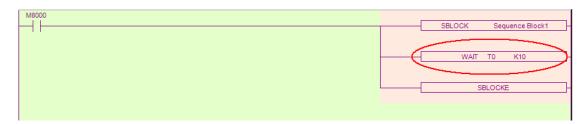
(A) Flag



(B) Timer Wait



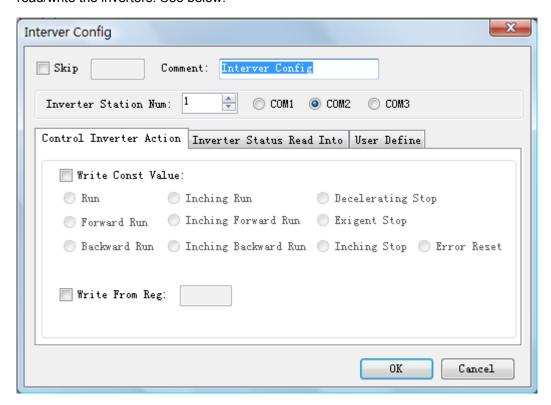
(C) See the result in the ladder



10-3-5 Frequency Inverter Configure

This time is applied for PLCs with XINJE inverters. By changing this interface, user can

read/write the inverters. See below:



The interface includes four parts, they are: inverter station number, COM port number, control inverter action, monitor inverter's status, user define etc. Below we introduce the four parts one by one:

(A) inverter's station number and COM port

The station number is used to specify the inverter's station number, the COM port is PLC's COM port, see the configuration below:

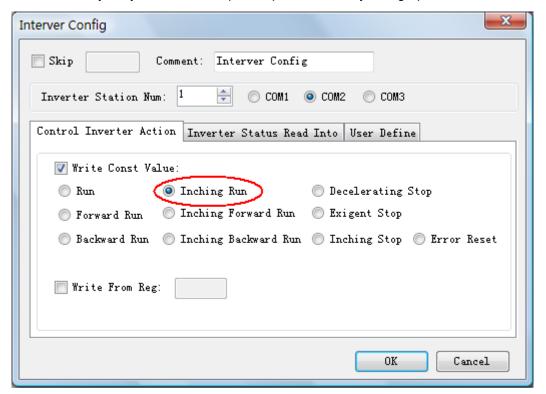


(B) Control Inverter's Action

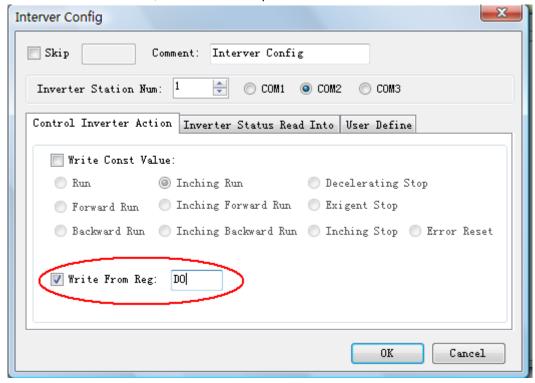
This item includes "write constant value" and "write from register". "write constant value"

specify the inverter's running manner directly; "write from register" decide the inverter's running manner according to register's value:

The first form is very easy, choose the required operation directly, see graph below:

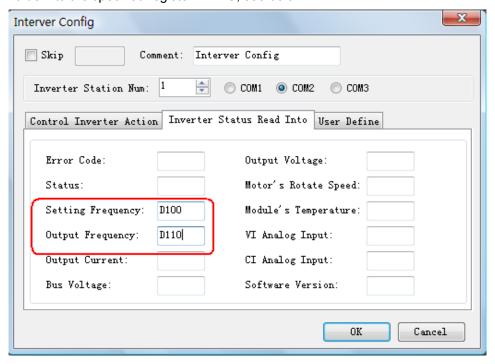


For the second form, we take an example to show: write D0 into inverter:



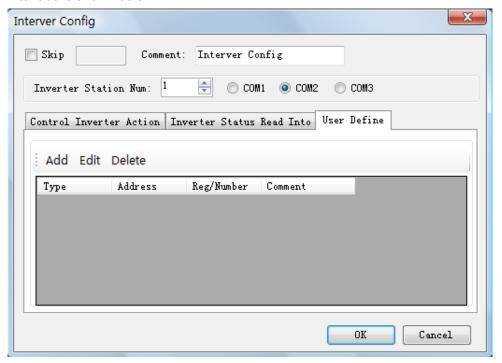
(C) Inverter Status Read Into

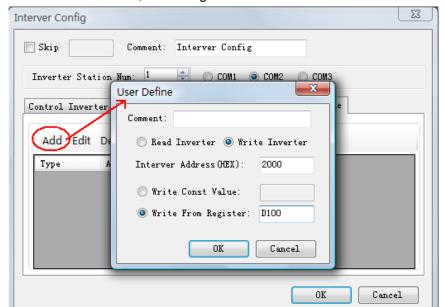
This is used to read inverter's status. According to the object shown on interface, insert the value into the specified register in PLC, see below:



(D) User Define

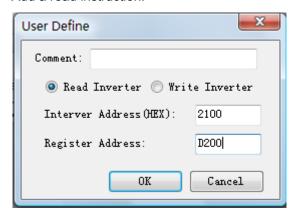
Set the inverter via user define mode, read from and write into inverter directly. The configure interface is shown below:



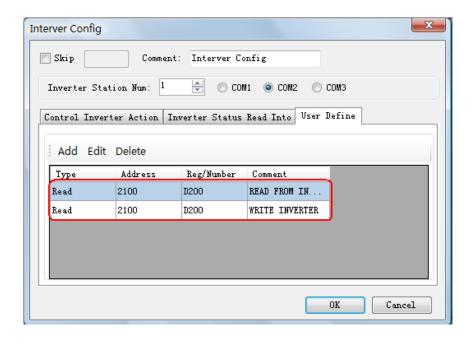


Add a write instruction, see configuration below:

Add a read instruction:



See the result below:



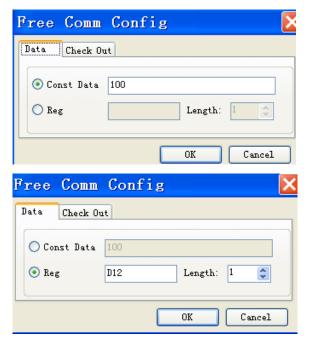
10-3-6 Free Format Communication

Add free format communication instructions in the block.

For example, select "send" instruction, first address set to D0, serial port is 2, 16 bits.



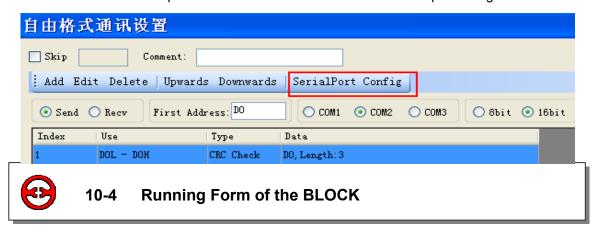
There are two methods to set the data. Const data is to set the value directly. Reg is to set the value via register.



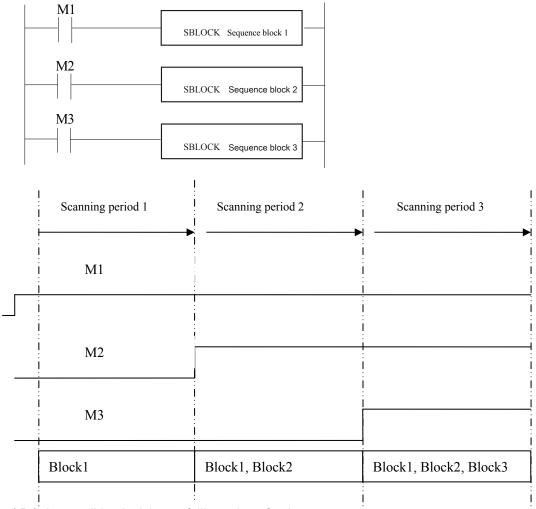
Change to check out tab, select the checking mode.



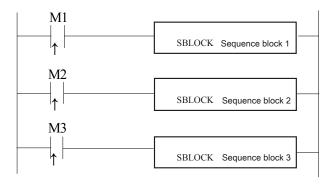
The communication parameters also need to be set. Click "serial port config":



- 1: If there are many blocks, they run as the normal program. The block is running when the condition is ON.
 - (A) the condition is normal ON, normal OFF coil

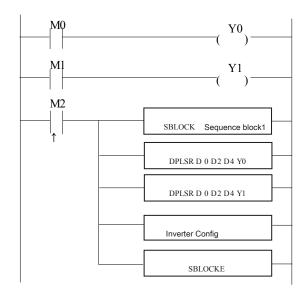


(B) the condition is rising or falling edge of pulse

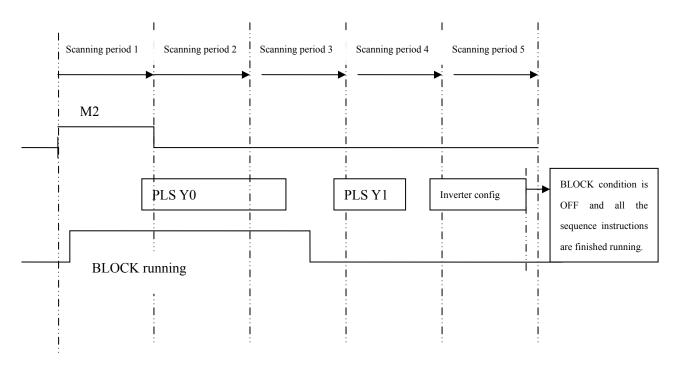


When M1, M2, M3 is from OFF to ON, all these blocks will run once.

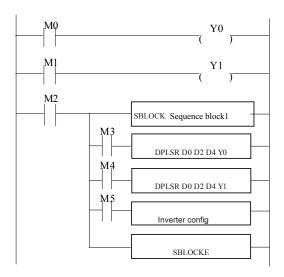
- 2: The instructions in the block run in sequence according to the scanning time. They run one after another when the condition is ON.
- (A) Without SKIP condition



The instructions running sequence in block 1 is shown as below:



(B) With SKIP condition



Explanation:

- A) When M2 is ON, block 1 is running.
- B) All the instructions run in sequence in the block.
- C) M3, M4, M5 are the sign of SKIP, when they are ON, this instruction will not run.
- D) When M3 is OFF, if no other instructions use this Y0 pulse , DPLSR D0 D2 D4 Y0 will run; if not, the DPLSR D0 D2 D4 Y0 will run after it is released by other instructions.
- E) After "DPLSR D0 D2 D4 Y0" is over, check M4. If M4 is OFF, check "DPLSR D0 D2 D4 Y1", if M4 is ON, check M5. If M5 is OFF, "inverter config" will run.

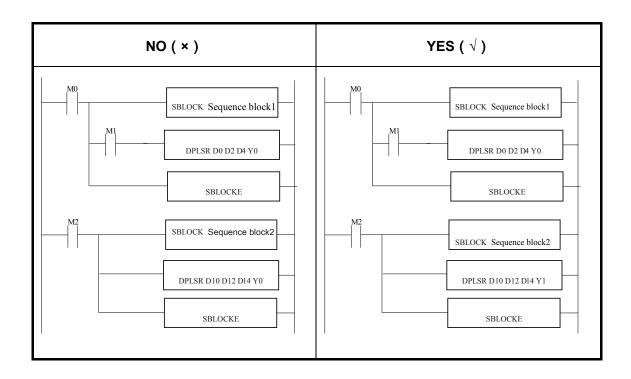


10-5 BLOCK instruction editing rules

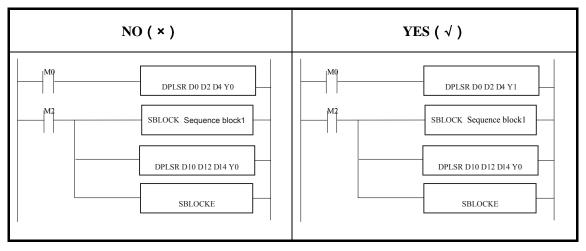
PLC Software Manual Page 327 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

In the BLOCK, when Instruction Editing follow the rules below:

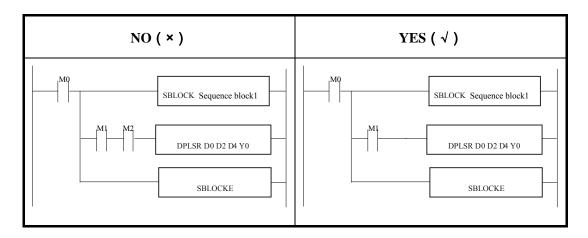
1:Do not use the same pulse output terminal in different BLOCK.



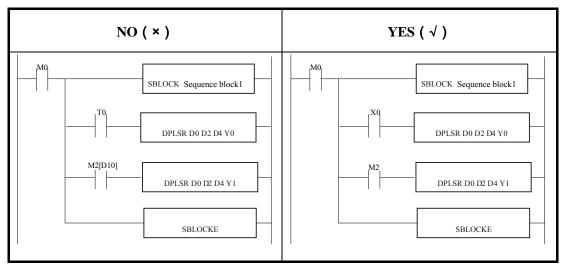
2: Do not use the same pulse output terminal in BLOCK and main program.



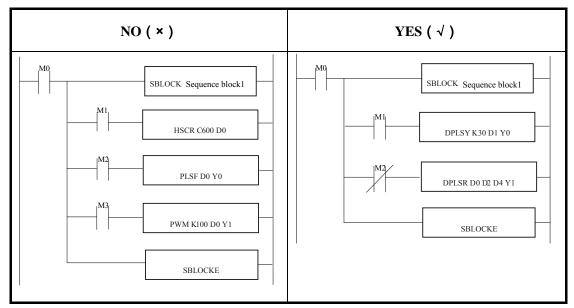
3: There only can be one SKIP condition for one BLOCK instruction.



4: The SKIP condition only can use M, X, can not use other coil or register.



5: The output instructions can not be HSC, PLSF, PWM, FRQM.



6. LabelKind type can not be used in the block. Sign P, I can not be used in block. (they can be added to the block but the program does not support this).



10-6 BLOCK Related Instructions

PLC Software Manual Page 329 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

10-6-1 Instruction Explanation

> Stop Running the BLOCK [BSTOP]

1: Summarization

Stop the instructions running in the block

[BSTOP]					
16 bits	BSTOP	32 bits	-		
Condition	NO,NC coil and pulse edge	Suitable	VC1 VC2 VC2 VCE VCM		
		types	XC1、XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM		
Hardware	V3.1i and above	Software	V3.1h and above		

2: Operand

Operand	Function	Туре
S1	The number of the BLOCK	16 bits, BIN
S2	The mode to stop the BLOCK	16 bits, BIN

3: Suitable component

Word	Operand						Constant	Мо	dule				
comp		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
onent	S1	•									•		
	S2										K		



• S2 is the mode to stop BLOCK, operand K1, K2

K0: stop the BLOCK slowly, if the pulse is outputting, the BLOCK will stop after the pulse outputting is finished.

K1: stop the BLOCK immediately; stop all the instructions running in the BLOCK.

Continue Running the BLOCK [BGOON]

PLC Software Manual Page 330 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

1: Summarization

This instruction is opposite to BSTOP. To continue running the BLOCK.

[BGOON]			
16 bits	BGOON	32 bits	-
Condition	Pulse edge	Suitable types	XC1、XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM
Hardware	V3.1i and above	Software	V3.1h and above

2: Operand

Operand	Function	Туре
S1	The number of the BLOCK	16 bits, BIN
S2	The mode to continue running the BLOCK	16 bits, BIN

3: Suitable component

Word	Operand		Register								Constant	Mo	dule
Comp		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
onent	S1	•									•		
	S2										K		

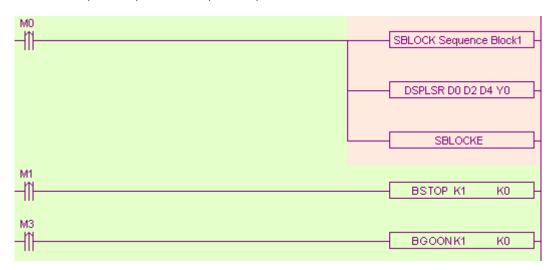


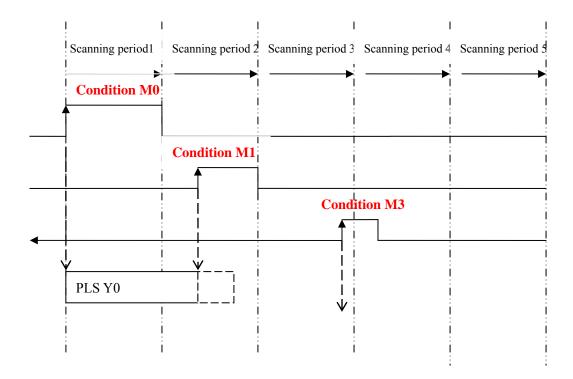
• S2 is the mode to continue running the BLOCK. Operand: K0, K1. K0: continue running the instructions in the BLOCK. For example, if pulse outputting stopped last time, BGOON will continue outputting the rest pulse. K1: continue running the BLOCK, but abandon the instructions have not finished last time. Such as the pulse output instruction, if the pulse has not finished last time, BGOON will not continue outputting this pulse but go to the next instruction in the BLOCK.

10-6-2 The timing sequence of the instructions

PLC Software Manual Page 331 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

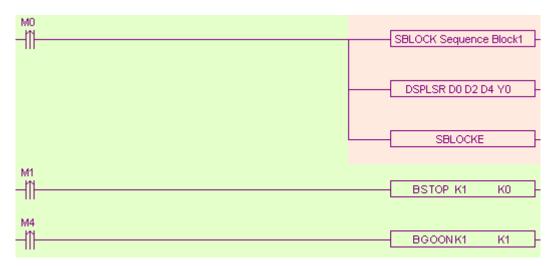
1: BSTOP (K1 K0) +BGOON (K1 K0)

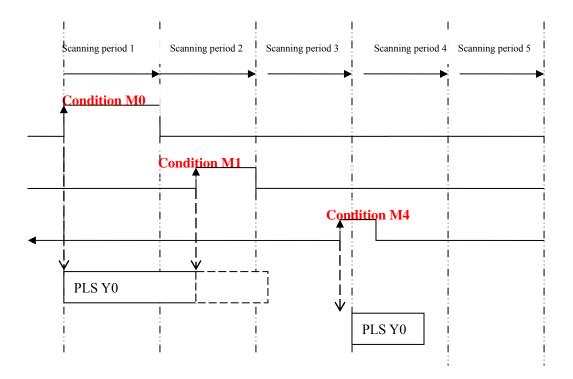




When M0 is from OFF \rightarrow ON, run "DSPLSR D0 D2 D4 Y0" in the BLOCK to output the pulse; when M1 is from OFF \rightarrow ON, the BLOCK stops running, pulse outputting stops at once; when M3 is from OFF \rightarrow ON, abandon the rest pulse.

2: BSTOP (K1 K0) +BGOON (K1 K1)

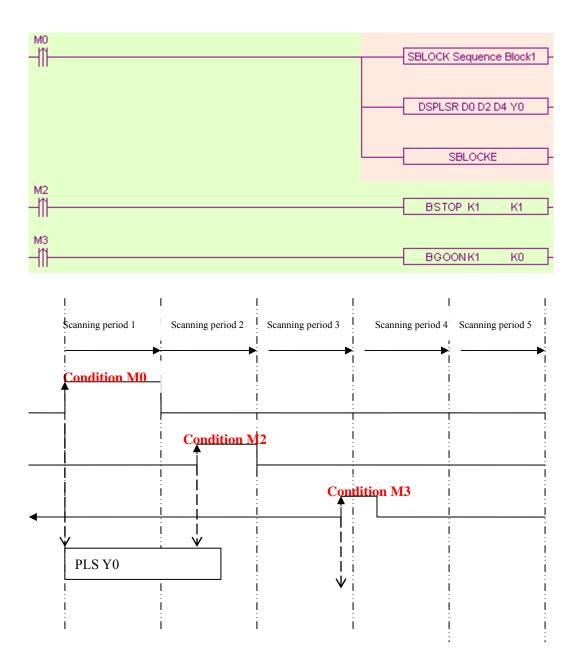




When M0 is from OFF→ON, run "DSPLSR D0 D2 D4 Y0" in the BLOCK to output the pulse; when M1 is from OFF→ON, the BLOCK stops running, the pulse outputting stops at once; when M4 is from OFF→ON, output the rest pulses.

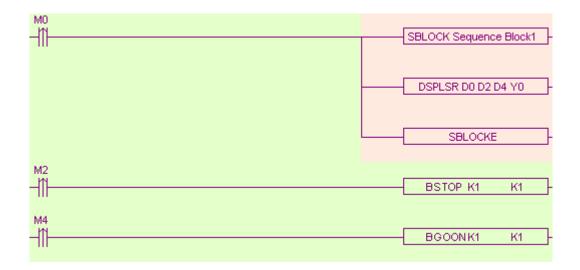
3: BSTOP (K1 K1) +BGOON (K1 K0)

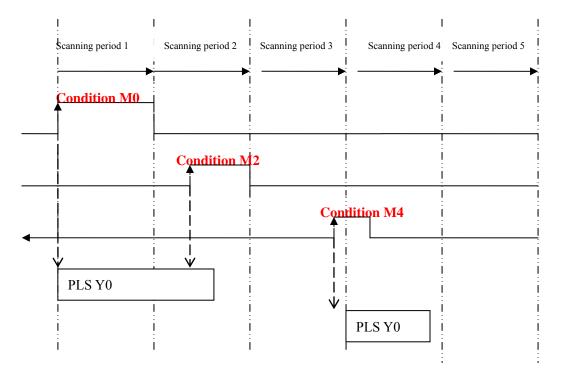
PLC Software Manual Page 333 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



When M0 is from OFF \rightarrow ON, run "DSPLSR D0 D2 D4 Y0" in the BLOCK to output the pulse; when M2 is from OFF \rightarrow ON, stop the BLOCK, the pulse will stop slowly with slope, when M3 is from OFF \rightarrow ON, discards the rest pulses.

4: BSTOP (K1 K1) +BGOON (K1 K1)





When M0 is from OFF→ON, run "DSPLSR D0 D2 D4 Y0" in the BLOCK to output the pulse; when M2 is from OFF→ON, stop running the BLOCK, the pulse will stop slowly with slope; when M4 is from OFF→ON, output the rest pulses.

Please note that though the BSTOP stops the pulse with slope, there maybe still some pulses; in this case, if run BGOON K1 K1 again, it will output the rest of the pulses.



10-7 BLOCK Flag Bit and Register

PLC Software Manual Page 335 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

1:BLOCK flag bit:

Address	Function	Explanation
M8630		
M8631	BLOCK1 running flag	
M8632	BLOCK2 running flag	1: running
		0: not running
M8730	BLOCK100 running flag	

2: BLOCK flag register

Address	Function	Explanation
D8630		
D 8631	BLOCK1 current running instruction	
D8632	BLOCK2 current running instruction	BLOCK use this value when
		monitoring
D8730	BLOCK10 current running instruction	



10-8 Program Example

PLC Software Manual Page 336 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

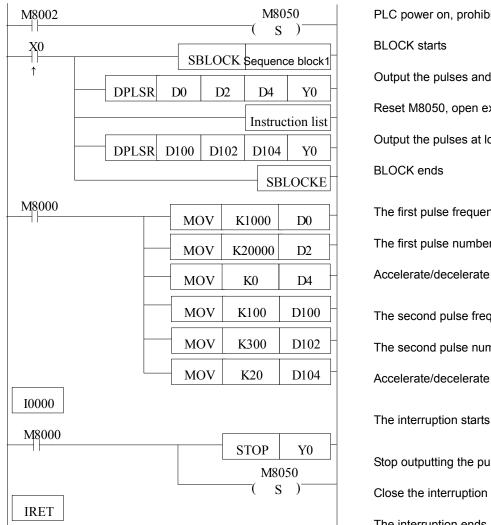
Example:

This example is used in the tracking system. The process as follows:

Output some pulses and prohibit exterior interruption.

Continue outputting the pulse but at low speed, and allow exterior interruption. When checked the exterior cursor signal, stop the pulse outputting and machine running.

Ladder chart:



PLC power on, prohibit exterior interruption

Output the pulses and move some distance

Reset M8050, open exterior interruption

Output the pulses at low speed

The first pulse frequency

The first pulse numbers

Accelerate/decelerate time for the first pulse

The second pulse frequency

The second pulse numbers

Accelerate/decelerate time for the second pulse

Stop outputting the pulse

Close the interruption

The interruption ends

The instruction list content:

RST M8050

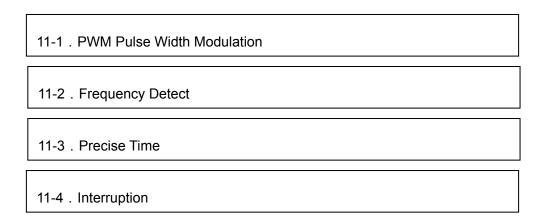
Notes:

M8050: prohibit the exterior interruption

11

Special Function Instructions

In this chapter, we introduce PWM pulse width modulation, frequency detect, precise time, interruption etc;



Instructions List

Mnemonic	Function	Circuit and soft components	Chapter
Pulse Width	Modulation, Frequency D	etection	
PWM	Output pulse with the specified occupied ratio and frequency	PWM S1 S2 D	11-1
FRQM	Frequency Detection	FRQM S1 D S2 S3	11-2
Time			
STR	Precise Time	STR D1 D2	11-3
STRR	Read Precise Time Register	STRR S	11-3
STRS	Stop Precise Time	STRS S	11-3
Interruption			
El	Enable Interruption	EI	11-4-1
DI	Disable Interruption	DI	11-4-1
IRET	Interruption Return	IRET	11-4-1



11-1 PWM Pulse with Modulation

1: Instruction's Summary

Instruction to realize PWM pulse width modulation

PWM pulse width modulation [PWM]										
16 bits	PWM	32 bits	-							
instruction		instruction								
execution	normally ON/OFF coil	suitable	VC4 VC2 VC2 VC5 VCM							
condition		models	XC1、XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM							
hardware	-	software	-							
requirement		requirement								

2: Operands

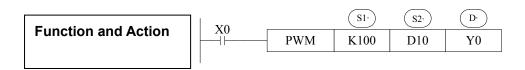
Operands	Function	Туре
S1	specify the occupy ratio value or soft component's ID number	16 bits, BIN
S2	specify the output frequency or soft component's ID number	16 bits, BIN
D	specify the pulse output port	bit

3: Suitable Soft Components

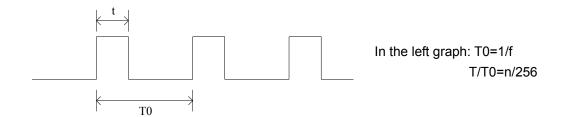
Word	Word Operands System								Constant	Mod	dule		
vvoid		D	FD	ED	ΤD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•	•		•	•					•		
	S2	•	•		•	•					•		

Bit

Operands	System						
	Х	Υ	М	S	Т	С	Dn.m
D		•					



- The occupy ratio n: 1~255
- Output pulse **f**: 0~72KHz
- Pulse is output at Y000 or Y001 (Please use transistor output)
- The output occupy/empty ratio of PMW =n /256×100%
- PWM output use the unit of 0.1Hz, so when set (S2) frequency, the set value is 10 times
 of the actual frequency (i.e. 10f). E.g.: to set the frequency as 72KHz, then set value in
 (S2) is 720000.
- When X000 is ON, output PWM wave; when X000 is OFF, stop output. PMW output doesn't have pulse accumulation.



PLC Software Manual Page 341 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



11-2 Frequency Testing

1: Instruction's Summary

Instruction to realize frequency testing

frequency testing [FRQM]							
16 bits	FRQM	32 bits	-				
instruction		instruction					
execution	normally ON/OFF coil	suitable	XC1、XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM				
condition		models	AC1, AC2, AC3, AC5, ACM				
hardware	-	software	-				
requirement		requirement					

2: Operands

Operands	Function	Туре
S1	Specify the sampling pulse number or soft component's ID	16 bits, BIN
	number	
S2	Specify the frequency division choice's number	16 bits, BIN
S3	Specify the pulse input port	bit
D	specify the tested result's soft component's number	16 bits, BIN

3: Suitable Soft Components

Word	Operands		_			Syste	m				Constant	Мо	dule
vvord		D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD
	S1	•			•	•					•		
	S2										•		
	D	•			•	•							
Bit	Operands		System										
Dit		Х	Υ	М	S	Т	(Dn.m				
	S3	•											

PLC Software Manual Page 342 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



- S1: sampling pulse number: the number to calculate the pulse frequency
- D: tested result, the unit is Hz.
- S2: Frequency division choice. It can be K1 or K2;
 When the frequency division is K1, the range is: no less than 9Hz, precision range: 9~18KHz.
 - When the frequency division is K2, the range: no less than 300Hz, precision range: 300~400KHz.
- In frequency testing, if choose frequency division as K2, the frequency testing precision is higher than frequency division K1.
- When X000 is ON, FRQM will test 20 pulse cycles from X003 every scan cycle.
 Calculate the frequency's value and save into D100. Test repeatedly. If the tested frequency's value is smaller than the test bound, then return the test value as 0.

The pulse output to X number:

Model		X Number
XC2 series	14/16/24/32/48/60 I/O	X1、X6、X7
	14 I/O	X2, X3
XC3 series	24/32 I/O	X1, X11, X12
	48/60 I/O、XC3-19AR-E	X4、X5
	24/32 I/O	X3
XC5 series	48/60 I/O	X1、X11、X12
XCM series	24/32 I/O	X3



11-3 Precise Time

1: Instruction List

Read and stop precise time when execute precise time;

precise time	[STR]		
16 bits	-	32 bits	STR
instruction		instruction	
execution	edge activation	suitable	XC1、XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM
condition		models	AC1, AC2, AC3, AC9, ACM
hardware	-	software	-
requirement		requirements	
read precise	time [STRR]		
16 bits	-	32 bits	STRR
instruction		instruction	
execution	edge activation	suitable	XC1、XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM
condition		models	AC1, AC2, AC3, AC9, ACM
hardware	V3.0e and above	software	-
requirement		requirements	
stop precise	time [STRS]		
16 bits	-	32 bits	STRS
instruction		instruction	
execution	edge activation	suitable	VC4 VC2 VC2 VCE VCM
condition		models	XC1、XC2、XC3、XC5、XCM
hardware	V3.0e and above	software	-
requirement		requirements	

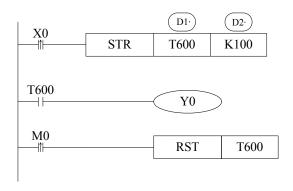
2: Operands

Operands	Function	Туре
D	Timer's Number	bit
D1	Timer's Number	bit
D2	specify timer's value or soft component's ID	16 bits, BIN
	number	

3: Suitable Soft Components

Word	operands					syster	m				constant	mod	dule
VVOIG	D	FD	ED	TD	CD	DX	DY	DM	DS	K/H	ID	QD	
	D2	•	•		•	•					•		
ı										,			
Bit	operands				sys	stem							
Dit		Χ	Υ	М	S	Т	С	; г	Dn.m				
	D					•							
	D1					•							

《Precise Time》

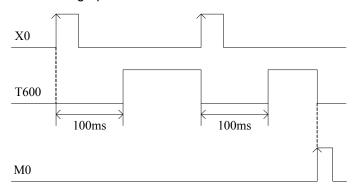


D1: Timer's number. Range: T600~T618 (T600、T602、T604...T618, the number should be even)

D2: Time Value

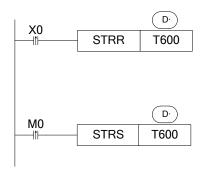
- The precise timer works in form of 1ms
- The precise timer is 32 bits, the count range is 0~+2,147,483,647.
- When X000 turns from OFF to ON, timer T600 starts to time, when time accumulation reaches 100ms, set T600; if X000 again turns from OFF to ON, timer T600 turns from ON to OFF, restart to time, when time accumulation reaches 100ms, T600 again reset. See graph below:
- When run STR instruction, reset the timer, then start to time;

See time graph below:



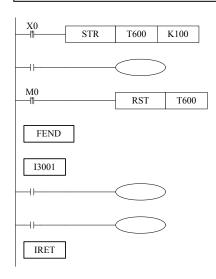
《read the precise time》、《stop precise time》

PLC Software Manual Page 345 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



- When X000 changes from OFF to ON, move the current precise time value into TD600 immediately, regardless of the scan cycle;
- When M000 changes from OFF to ON, execute STRS instruction immediately, stop precise time and refresh the count value in TD600. Regardless of the scan cycle;
- When the precise time reaches the count value, generate a corresponding interruption tag, execute some interruption subroutines.
- Start the precise time in precise time interruption;
- Every precise timer has its own interruption tag, see table below:

Precious Time Interruption



When X000 changes from OFF to be ON, timer T600 starts to time. When time accumulates to 100ms, set T600; meantime, generate an interruption, the program jumps to interruption tag I3001 and execute the subroutine.

Interruption Tag correspond with the Timer

Timer's Nr.	Interruption Tag
T600	I3001
T602	13002
T604	13003
T606	13004
T608	13005
T610	13006
T612	13007
T614	13008
T616	13009
T618	I3010

11-4 Interruption

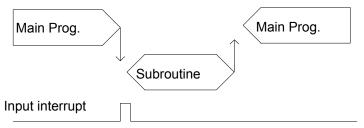
PLC Software Manual Page 346 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



XC Series PLCs are equipped with an interruption function. The interruption function includes external interruption and time interruption. With the interruption function we can utilize some special programs. This function is not effected by the scan cycle.

11-4-1 External Interruption

The input terminals X can be used to input external interruption. Each input terminal corresponds with one external interruption. The input's rising/falling edge can activate the interruption. The interruption subroutine is written behind the main program (behind FEND). After interruption generates, the main program stops running immediately, turn to run the correspond subroutine. After subroutine running ends, continue to execute the main program.



bf 365

XC3-14

Innut	Point	er Nr.	Disable the
Input	Rising	Falling	interruption
Terminal	Interruption	Interruption	instruction
X7	10000	10001	M8050

XC2 series、XC3-24/32、XC5-48/60

lanut	Point	Disable the	
Input Terminal	Rising	interruption	
Terriniai	Interruption	Interruption	instruction
X2	10000	10001	M8050
X5	I0100	I0101	M8051
X10	10200	10201	M8052

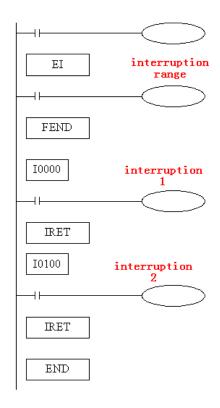
XC3-48/60、XC3-19AR-E

Input Terminal	Point	Disable the	
	Rising	interruption	
Terrilliai	Interruption	Interruption	instruction
X10	10000	10001	M8050
X7	I0100	I0101	M8051
X6	10200	10201	M8052

XC5-24/32、XCM-24/32-

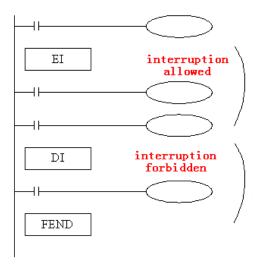
Input Terminal	Point	Disable the	
	Rising	Falling	interruption
	Interruption	Interruption	instruction
X2	10000	10001	M8050
X5	I0100	I0101	M8051
X10	10200	10201	M8052
X11	10300	10301	M8053
X12	10400	10401	M8054

Enable Interruption [EI]. Disable Interruption [DI]. Interruption Return [IRET]



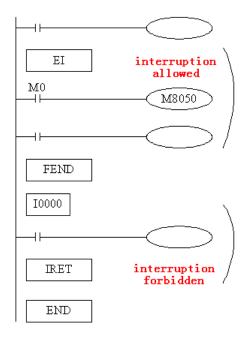
- If use EI instruction to allow interruption, then when scanning the program, if interruption input changes from OFF to be
 ON, then execute subroutine①、②, return to the original main program;
- Interruption pointer (I****) should be behind FEND instruction;
- PLC is default to allow interruption

PLC Software Manual Page 349 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



- Via program with DI instruction, set interruption forbidden area;
- Allow interruption input between EI~DI
- If interruption forbidden is not required, please program only with EI, program with DI is not required.

Disable the Interruption



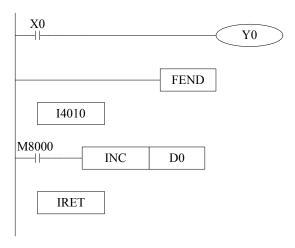
- Every input interruption is equipped with special relay (M8050~M8052) to disable interruption;
- In the left program, if use M0 to set M8050 "ON", then disable the interruption input at channel 0.

11-4-2 Time Interruption

PLC Software Manual Page 350 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

Functions and Actions

Within the main program's execution cycle, if you need to handle a special program; or during the sequential scanning, a special program needs to be executed at a certain time, time interruption function is required. This function is not affected by PLC's scan cycle, every Nm, executes a time interruption subroutine.



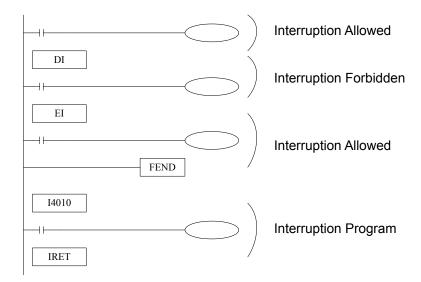
- Time interruption is defaulted in open status, time interruption subroutine is similar with other interruption subroutine, it should be written behind the main program, starts with I40xx, ends with IRET.
- There are 10CH time interruptions. The represent method is I40**~I49** ("**" means time interruption's time, unit is ms. For example, I4010 means run one channel time interruption every 10ms.

Interruption Number

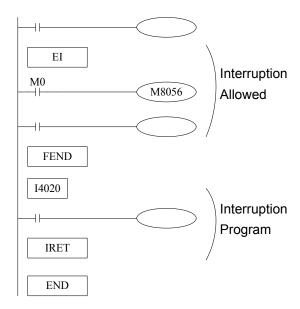
Interruption Nr.	Interruption Forbidden Instruction	Description
I40**	M8056 M8057	
l42**	M8058	
144**	-	"**" represents time interruption's time, range
I46**	-	from 1 to 99, unit is ms.
I47** I48**	-	
I49**	-	

Interruption Range's Limitation

- Normally time interruption is in "allow" status
- With EI、DI can set interruption's allow or forbidden area. As in the above graph, all time
 interruptions are forbidden between DI~EI, and allowed beyond DI~EI.



Interruption Forbidden



- The first 3CH interruptions are equipped with special relays (M8056~M8059) to forbid interrupt
- In the left example program, if use M0 to enable M8056 "ON", the forbid 0CH's time interruption.

PLC Software Manual Page 352 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

12 Program Application Samples

In this chapter, we make some samples about pulse output instruction, Modbus communication instructions and free format communication instructions etc.

12-1 . Pulse Output Application
12-2 . Modbus Communication Application
12-3 . Free Format Communication Application



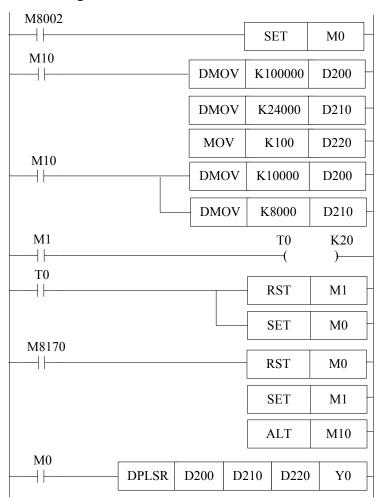
12-1 Pulse Output Application

Example: below is the example program to send high/low pulse in turn Each Parameter:

Stepping motor parameters: step angle= 1.8 degrees/step, scale=40, pulse number per rotate is 8000

High frequency pulse: maximum frequency is 100KHz, total pulse number is 24000 (3 rotates) Low frequency pulse: maximum frequency is 10KHz, total pulse number is 8000 (1 rotates)

Ladder Program:



Instruction List:

LD	M8002		//initial positive pulse coil
SET	MO		//set M0 ON
LDF	M10		//M10 falling edge activate condition
OR	M8002		//Initial data
DMOV	K100000	D200	//move decimal data 100000 into DWORD D200
DMOV	K24000	D210	// move decimal data 24000 into DWORD D210
MOV	K100	D220	// move decimal data 100 into DWORD D220

PLC Software Manual Page 354 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

LDP	M10	//M10 rising edge activate condition							
DMOV	K10000	D20	D200 // move decimal data 10000 into DWORD D200						
DMOV	K8000	D21	0		// move decimal data 8000 into DWORD D210				
LD	M1				//M1 status activate condition				
OUT	T0 K20				//100ms timer T0, time 2 seconds				
LD	T0				//T0 status activate condition				
RST	M1				//reset M1				
SET	MO				//set M0				
LDF	M8170				//M8170 falling edge activate condition				
RST	MO				//reset M0				
SET	M1				//set M1				
ALT	M10				//M10 status NOT				
LD	M0				//M0 status activate condition				
DPLSR	D200 I	D210	D220	Y0	//value in D200 is frequency, value in D210 is				

pulse number、value is D220 is acceleration/deceleration time, send pulse via Y0;

Explanation:

When PLC changes from STOP to be RUN, M8002 gets a scan cycle; set the high frequency pulse parameters into D200、D210, set the acceleration/deceleration speed to D220, set M0, the motor starts to run 3 rounds with high frequency.

Meantime M8170 sets; the motor runs 3 rounds and decelerate, stop, coil M8170 reset; then reset M0, set M1, NOT M10; set the low frequency pulse parameters into D200、D210; the timer time lags 2sec, when time reaches, reset M1; set M0, the motors starts to run 1 round with low frequency;

Repeat this alternation time by time;

after this starts to run with high frequency.

PLC Software Manual Page 355 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



12-2 Modbus Communication Application

E.g.1: realize Modbus read/write among one master and three slaves

Operation: (1) write content in D10~D14 to D10~D14 of 2# slave;

(2) read D15~D19 of the slaves to D15~D19 of the mater; anyhow, write the first five registers' content to the slaves, the left five registers are used to store the content from the slaves:

(3) 3# . 4# slaves are similar;

Soft component's comments:

D0: communication station number

D1: offset

M2: 2# communication error M3: 3# communication error M4: 4# communication error

M8137: COM2 communication error end signal

M8138: COM2 communication correct end signal

S0: write the target station

S1: read the target station

S2: judge the communication status

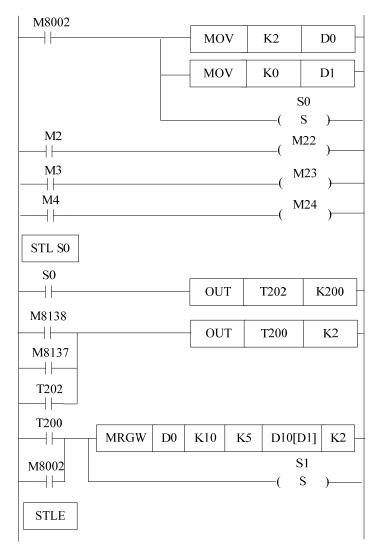
S3: offset the communication ID T200: communication interval 1

T201: communication interval 2

T202: self reset 1 of communication error T203: self reset 2 of communication error

Ladder

PLC Software Manual Page 356 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



In PLC's first scan cycle, evaluate the "communication station" to be 2;

Evaluate the "offset" to be 0

2# communication error reset

3# communication error reset

4# communication error reset

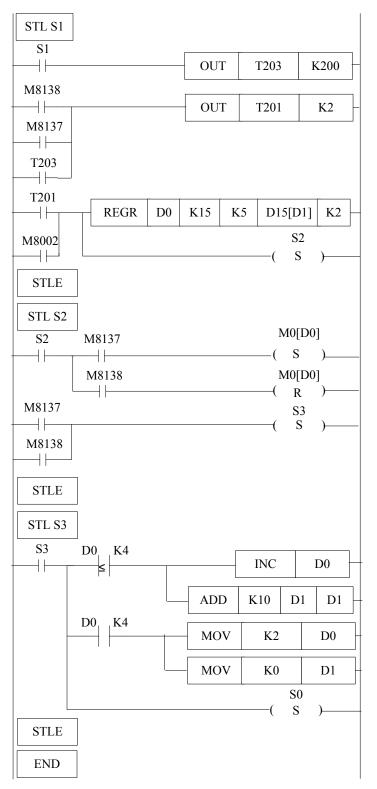
S0 starts, T202 counts 2S, which is the communication wait time

When the communication wait time reaches, no matter the communication succeeds or not, T200 time 20ms, this time is used start the next

T200 time reaches, or on the power up, execute the RUN operation to the target station

Open the flow S1

PLC Software Manual Page 357 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2



S0 starts, T203 time 2s, which is the communication waiting time

When communication waiting time reaches, no matter the communication succeeded or not, T201 counts 20ms, this time is used to start the next

T201 times reach, or on the power up, execute the read operation with the target stations

Open flow S2

Flow S2 is used to judge the communication status. Failure will set the correspond coil; success will reset the correspond coil;

If the station number is not larger than 4, the station register add 1, the offset add 10

If the station number is larger than 4, evaluate the station register 1; clear the offset register

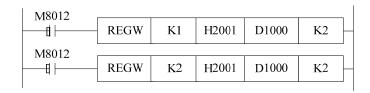
Open flow S0

Program Explanation:

When PLC turns from STOP to RUN, M8002 gets a scan cycle. So flow open, write the master's D10——D14 to slave 2# D10——D14. no matter the communication is success or not, turn to S1 flow; check the previous communication written condition. After certain time delay, continue to read D15~D19 data from 2#. After this reading entr S2 flow, check if the communication is success. If failed, set M23, enter alarming. After finishing the communication with 2#, enter S3, then flow S3 will judge with the station number. If the station number is less than 1, the offset add 10; or else start from 2# again.

e.g. 2: Below is a sample of XC Series PLC with two XINJE inverters, they communicate via Modbus communication, XC Series PLCs write the frequency to the two inverters;

set the first inverter's station to be 1; set the second inverter's station to be 2; store the frequency's set value in D1000 and D2000. execute the frequency setting order via COM ports;



Program Description:

On the rising edge of M8012, write frequency to the first inverter; on the falling edge of M8012, write frequency to the second inverter;



12-3 Free Format Communication Application

In this example, we use DH107/DH108 series instruments;

1, Interface Specifications

DH107/DH108 series instruments use asynchronous serial communication interface, the interface level fits RS232C or RS485 standard. The data format is: 1 start bit, 8 data bits, no parity, one/two stop bit. The baud rate can be 1200~19200bit/s.

2. Communication Instruction Format

DH107/108 instruments use Hex data form to represent each instruction code and data; Read/write instructions:

Read: address code +52H (82) +the para.(to read) code +0+0+CRC parity code

Write: address code +43H (67) + the para.(to write) code +low bytes of the wrote data +

high bytes of the wrote data +CRC parity code

The read instruction's CRC parity code is: the para. (to read) code *256+82+ADDR

ADDR is instrument's address para., the range is 0~100 (pay attention not to add 80H). CRC is the remainder from the addition of the above data (binary 16bits integral). The reminder is 2 bytes, the high byte is behind the low byte;

The write instruction's CRC parity code is: the para. (to write) code *256+67+ the para. value (to write) +ADDR

The para. to write represents with 16 bits binary integral;

Regardless of whether it is write or read, the instrument should return data as shown below:

The test value PV+ given value SV+ output value MV and alarm status +read/write parameters value +CRC parity code

Among in, PV, SV and the read parameters are all in integral form, each occupies two bytes,

MV occupies one byte, the value range is 0~220, alarm status occupies one byte, CRC parity code occupies two bytes, totally 10 byes.

CRC parity code is the reminder from the result of PV+SV+ (alarm status *256+MV)+ para. value +ADDR;

(for details, please refer to AIBUS communication description)

3. Write the program

After power on the PLC, the PLC read the current temperature every 40ms. During this period, the user can write the set temperature.

Data zone definition: buffer area of sending data D10~D19 buffer area of accepting data D20~D29

PLC Software Manual Page 360 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

instruction's station number: D30 read command's value: D31=52 H write command's value: D32=43 H

parameter's code: D33 temperature setting: D34 CRC parity code: D36

Temperature display: D200,D201

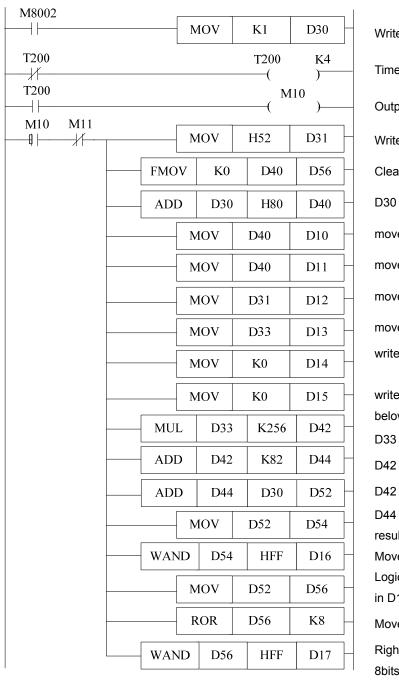
The send data form: 81H 81H 43H 00H c8H 00H 0cH 01H (current temperature display) Communication parameters setting: baud rate: 9600, 8 data bits, 2 stop bits, no parity

Set FD8220=255; FD8221=5

(the hardware and software must be V2.4 or above)

PLC Software Manual Page 361 of 365 LMAN021_R2V2

Ladder:



Write instrument's station Nr. K1 in to D30

Time 40ms

Output M10

Write the read code 52H into D31

Clear registers D40-D56

D30 add H80 to get value 81H

move D40 (81H) to D10

move D40 (81H) to D11

move D31 (read code 52H) to D12

move D33 (para. code) to D13

write zero to D14

write zero to D15

below is to calculate CRC parity;

D33 multiply K256, the result is saved in

D42 add K82, the result is stored in D44

D44 add D30 (instrument's station), the result is saved in D52

Move D52 into D54

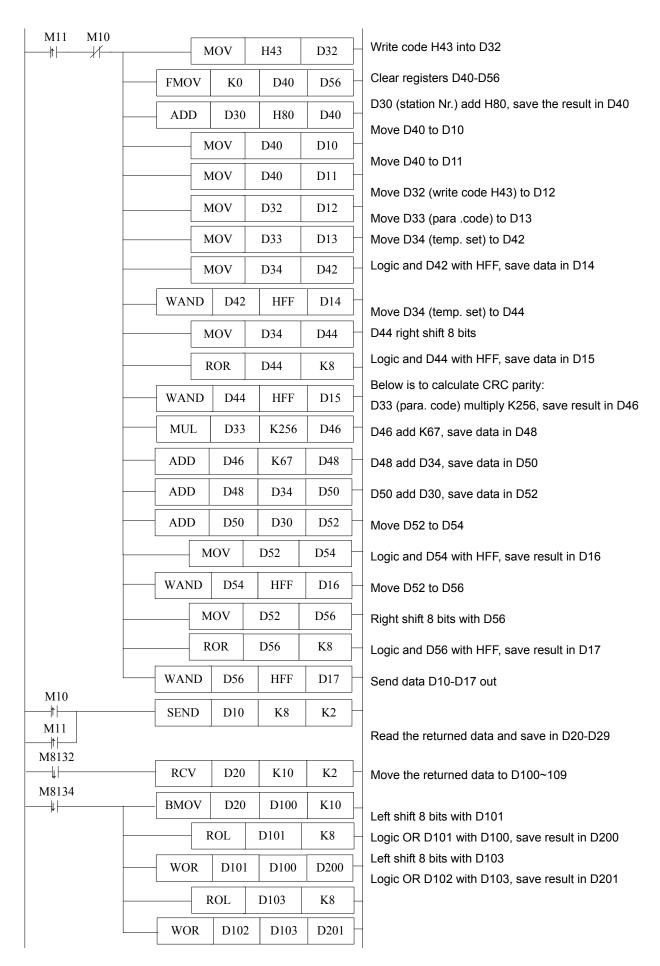
Logic AND D54 with HFF, save the result in D16

Move D52 into D56

Right shift 8 bits with D56 (convert the high

8bits to the low 8 bits)

Logic AND D56 with HFF, save the result in D17



Program Description:

The above program is written according to DH instrument's communication protocol, the soft component's functions are listed below:

Relationship of sent (SEND) data string and registers:

	D10	D11	D12	D13	D14	D15	D16	D17
Read	Address	Address	Read	Parameters	0	0	CRC	CRC
	code	code	code	code			low	high
			52H				bytes	bytes
Write	Address	Address	Write	Parameters	low	high	CRC	CRC
	code	code	code	code	bytes of	bytes of	low	high
			42H		the	the	bytes	bytes
					written	written		
					data	data		

Relationship of received (RCV) data (data returned by the instrument) and the registers:

D20	D21	D22	D23	D24	D25	D26	D27	D28	D29
PV low	PV	SV low	SV	Output	Alarm	Read/write	Read/write	CRC	CRC
bytes	high	bytes	high	value	status	low bytes	high bytes	low	high
	bytes		bytes					bytes	bytes

When writing a data string according to the communication objects' protocol, use SEND and RCV commands from free format communication, user will get the communication with the objects.

Documentation Reference							
Document Number Revision Date							
LMAN 021 R2 V2 18/07/2012							

XINJE IS A REGISTERED TRADEMARK OF XINJE ELECTRICAL CO.LTD. REPLICATION OF THE INFORMATION CONTAINED WITHIN THIS DOCUMENT WITHOUT PRIOR NOTIFICATION AND AGREEMENT IS PROHIBITED.



For help and support regarding your XINJE products visit the online Support Centre or contact us on: support@listo-ltd.com.

 $\frac{www.listo-ltd.com}{www.xinje-support-centre-listo.com}$



International partners with:



Contact us

Listo Ltd.

46a Derrymore Road Gawley's Gate Co Armagh Northern Ireland BT67 0BW

0843 557 2130

info@listo-ltd.com www.xinje-support-centre-listo.com

